

同步作业类 **附** 夹册 (含答案)

六年级英语 **上** 最新修订

主编 万志勇

网小状元 黄作业本



扫内文二维码**免费**获取听力资源



龍門書局 | 龙门品牌·学子至爱
www.longmenshuj.com

班级_____ 姓名_____ 学号_____









RP



Unit 1 How can I get there?

A. Let's try Let's talk

一、将下列实物与其所属的场所连线。

1. 	2. 	3. 	4. 
A. 	B. 	C. 	D. 

二、选出与句中画线部分不同类的选项,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Is there a cinema near here?
A. park B. where C. library
- () 2. It's next to the hospital.
A. school B. post office C. robot
- () 3. —Where is the pet shop? —It's beside the shoe shop.
A. ask B. near C. behind
- () 4. I want to go to the zoo.
A. science museum B. bookstore C. postcard
- () 5. —Who is that tall man? —Sorry, I don't know.
A. How B. Where C. There

三、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. _____ is the post office?
A. How many B. Who C. Where

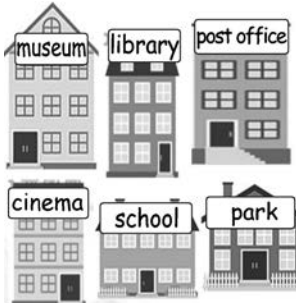
- () 2. A _____ robot!
A. talking B. talk C. talks
- () 3. I don't know. _____ ask.
A. I'm B. I'll C. She
- () 4. What _____ beautiful flower!
A. an B. a C. the
- () 5. _____ there a school near here?
A. Is B. Are C. Does

四、根据图片选择正确的单词或词组,将下列句子补充完整。

near

next to

behind



1. The museum is _____ the cinema.
2. The park is _____ the school.
3. The cinema is _____ the library.
4. The post office is _____ the park.
5. The library is _____ the post office.

五、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在相应的横线上。

A: Excuse me. 1. _____ I want to buy a book.

B: Yes. It's near the park.

A: Thanks! Where is the post office? 2. _____

B: 3. _____

A: Thank you.

B: 4. _____

A. You're welcome.

B. Is there a bookstore near here?

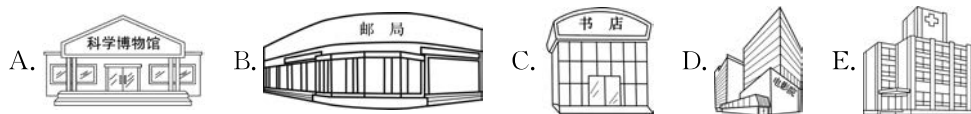
C. It's next to the library.

D. I want to send it today.



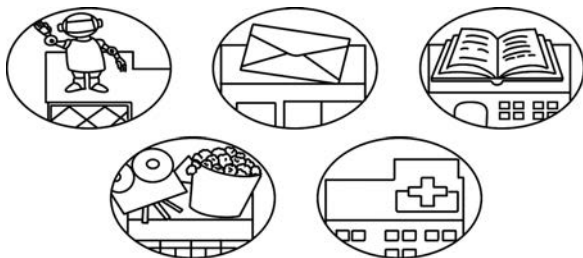
A. Let's learn Make a map and talk

一、根据描述选择合适的图片,将其序号填在相应的横线上。



1. We can send letters and postcards in it. It's the _____.
2. It's a place. There are many interesting robots in it. It's the _____.
3. If you don't feel well, you can go to see a doctor. You can go to the _____.
4. It's a place. We often see a film in it. It's the _____.
5. It's a place. There are lots of books there. You can read and buy books there. It's the _____.

二、看图,用合适的单词或词组完成对话。



前面

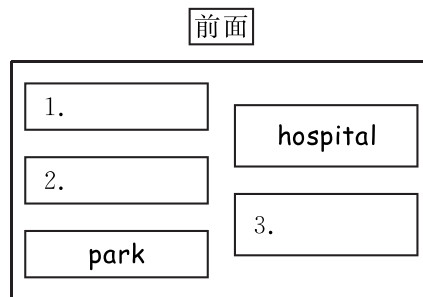
1. —Where is the post office?
—It's between the _____ and the _____.
2. —Where is the cinema?
—It's next to the _____.
3. —Is the post office in front of the cinema?
—No, it's _____ the cinema.

三、用数字给下列句子排序。

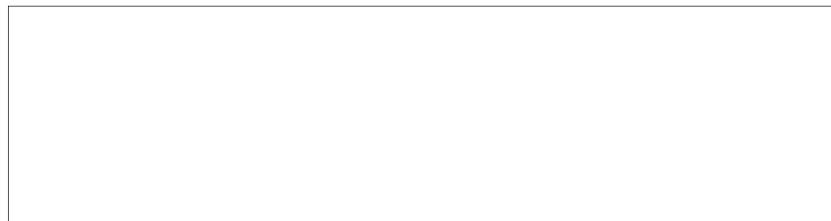
- () It's near the park.
- (1) There is a pet hospital in my city.
- () It's next to the bookstore.
- () Where is it?
- () Where is the park?

四、读对话,将场所名称填入图中。

- A: Where's the museum?
B: It's in front of the park.
- A: Where is the bookstore?
B: It's behind the hospital.
- A: Where is the library?
B: It's near the hospital, and in front of the museum.



五、仿照第四题,画出你家与周边建筑的位置关系图,然后用英文介绍一下,尽可能用上“near/ next to/ in front of/ behind/ beside/ between... and...”等词,至少四句话。



My home is _____.



阶段复习训练



Listening Part



听力音频

一、听录音,判断下列图片与你所听到的内容是否相符,相符的画“😊”,不相符的画“😞”。



1. 😊



2. 😊



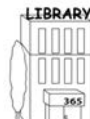
3. 😊



4. 😊



5. 😊



6. 😊

二、听录音,选择你所听到的单词或词组补全句子,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. The park is _____ the zoo.
A. near B. next to C. behind
- () 2. I want to _____ a letter today.
A. send B. buy C. write
- () 3. Do you like this _____?
A. pet hospital B. post office C. postcard
- () 4. My parents are in the _____.
A. supermarket B. bookstore C. cinema

三、听录音,根据你所听到的问句,用 A、B、C、D 给下列答语排序。

- () Yes, there is.
() They are on the playground.
() It's near the post office.
() No, she isn't.

四、听短文,根据你所听到的内容完成地图,将其序号填在相应的横线上。

1. _____	2. _____	zoo
3. _____	4. _____	E
	5. _____	
前面		

- A. museum B. supermarket
C. cinema D. bookstore
E. park F. bus stop



Writing Part

五、选择可以替换句中画线部分同类选项,将其序号填在相应的横线上。(有两项多余)

- A. museum B. next to C. hospital D. post office E. send
F. near G. bookstore H. in front of I. cinema J. postcard

1. There is a library in my city. _____
2. The pet shop is beside the park. _____

六、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. _____ a great museum!
A. what B. What C. How
- () 2. A _____ doll! How lovely!
A. talking B. talks C. talk
- () 3. The museum is next _____ the cinema.
A. for B. in C. to



() 4. There _____ a pet hospital near the park.

A. are

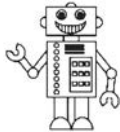
B. am

C. is

七、判断下列对话与图片是否相符,相符的打“√”,不相符的打“×”。

() 1. —What's that?

—It's my robot.



() 2. —Where is the tree?

—It's near the house.



() 3. —Where is the elephant?

—It's in the science museum.



() 4. —Is there a park?

—Yes, there is.



八、按要求完成下列各题。

1. want, I, a, to, postcard, buy (.) (连词成句)

2. The, is, cinema, to, the, next, bookstore (.) (连词成句)

3. There is a pet hospital near the school. (改为一般疑问句)

4. My classmates are in the science museum. (对画线部分提问)

5. It's a great museum. (改为 What 引导的感叹句)

九、给下列问句选择相应的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

() 1. Where is the museum shop?

A. Yes, there is.

() 2. Is there a library near here?

B. They're in the bookstore.

() 3. Where are they?

C. No, it isn't.

() 4. Is it next to the post office?

D. It's near the door.

十、阅读短文,完成地图,将合适的场所名称填在相应的横线上。

This is a city puzzle. Well, let's go. The science museum is between the bookstore and the post office. The bookstore is behind the cinema. The cinema is round and big. The hospital is next to the cinema. The library is in front of the post office. Can you finish the puzzle?

1. _____	science museum	2. _____
3. _____	4. _____	5. _____
前面		

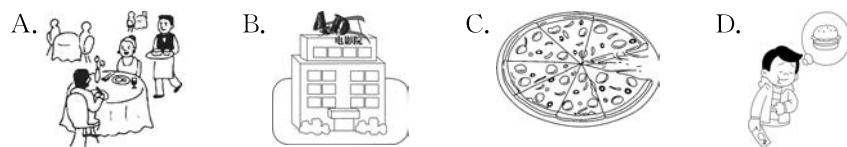


B. Let's try Let's talk

一、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. —Are you full now, Mike? —No, I'm still _____.
A. friendly B. funny C. hungry
- () 2. —Turn right _____ the bookstore?
—No. We should turn _____ there.
A. to; straight B. at; left C. at; around
- () 3. What _____ interesting book!
A. a B. an C. /
- () 4. How can they _____ the restaurant?
A. get B. go straight C. get to
- () 5. It's next to the park _____ Dongfang Street.
A. on B. from C. for

二、给下列句子选择相对应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。



- () 1. Let's go to the cinema.
- () 2. I like pizza very much.
- () 3. My parents have lunch in the restaurant.
- () 4. Peter is very hungry.

三、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在相应的横线上。

- A. How can I get there?
B. Where is the cinema?
C. Thank you very much.
D. Then turn right at the bookstore.

A: I want to see a film. 1. _____

B: It's near the restaurant.

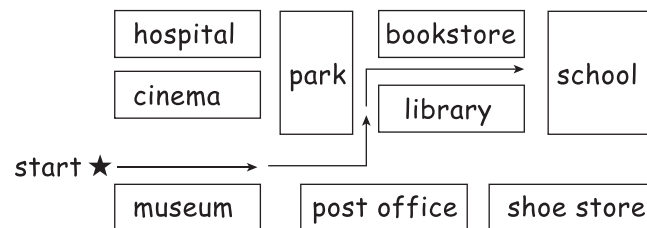
A: 2. _____

B: Turn left at the post office. 3. _____

A: Oh, I see. 4. _____

B: You're welcome!

四、根据下面的路线示意图补全对话。



—How can I get to school on foot?

—First, 1. _____. Then 2. _____ at the park.

Next, go straight again. 3. _____ at the library. Go straight.

The school is near the library. You can see it.

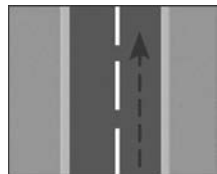
—Thank you very much.

—You're welcome.



B. Let's learn Be a tour guide

一、根据图片写出相应的单词或词组。



1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

二、根据汉语意思选择相应的内容补全句子, 将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. His father is a(n) _____ (导游).
 A. tour guide B. football player C. art teacher
- () 2. We are near _____ (故宫博物院).
 A. Beihai Park B. Tian'anmen C. the Palace Museum

三、看地图, 根据对话内容写出图中 A、B、C、D 四个地方的名称。

Mike: Excuse me. Is there a Xinhua Bookstore near here?

Robin: Yes, there is.

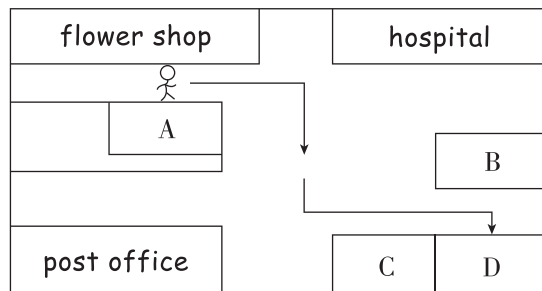
Mike: Where is it, please?

Robin: It's next to the cinema.

Mike: How can I get there?

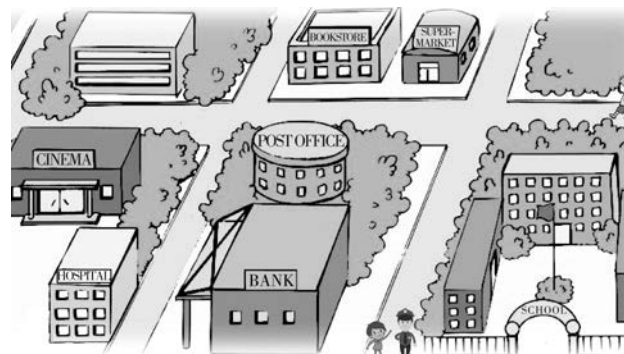
Robin: Turn right at the park. Go straight. And turn left at the museum. You will see the cinema. Xinhua Bookstore is next to the cinema and behind the museum.

Mike: Thank you.



- A. _____
- B. _____
- C. _____
- D. _____

四、看图, 选择合适的句子补全对话, 将其序号填在相应的横线上。



—Excuse me. Where is the bookstore?

—1. _____

—I don't know where the supermarket is. 2. _____

—Go straight for two minutes and you can see the supermarket. 3. _____

You can see the bookstore.

- A. How can I get there?
- B. And then turn left.
- C. It's next to the supermarket.



B. Read and write

一、给下列句子选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。



- () 1. This is a map of the city.
 () 2. When you are in a car, GPS can help you find a place.
 () 3. The stars may help you find the way at night.
 () 4. When you are in a ship, the compass can help you find the way.

二、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Sarah _____ a new compass.
 A. has B. have C. does
- () 2. We can _____ the bookstore.
 A. give B. send C. find
- () 3. You can turn right _____ the zoo.
 A. on B. in C. at
- () 4. Please follow _____.
 A. I B. me C. my
- () 5. Let's clean our classroom _____.
 A. first B. one C. but

三、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在相应的横线上。

- A. Let's go straight for ten minutes.
 B. OK. Let's go.
 C. Can we eat at the restaurant first?
 D. I can help you.
 E. Is it far?

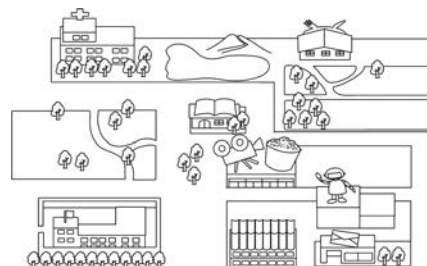
- Do you want to find the science museum? 1. _____
 —Thank you. 2. _____
 —No, it's not very far. 3. _____ Then turn left at the school.
 —But I'm so hungry. 4. _____
 —5. _____

四、根据课文 Read and Write 的内容,完成下列任务。

任务一:用合适的单词补全句子。

- Robin and his friends want to go to the Italian 1. _____ from the
 2. _____. They will pass by the 3. _____ and the 4. _____.

任务二:请在下图中标出 Robin 用 GPS 导航步行去目的地的路线。



B. Read and write & Tips for pronunciation

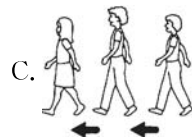
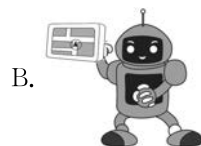
一、用正确的语调读下列句子,并将其与相对应的图片连线。

1. Follow me, please!

2. Robin has GPS.

3. Is it far?

4. Where is the restaurant?



二、给下列问句选择合适的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

() 1. Where does the boy want to go?

() 2. Is there a library?

() 3. What's Robin's new feature?

() 4. Is it far?

A. No, it's not far.

B. He wants to go to the restaurant.

C. Yes, there is.

D. He has GPS. He can help people find the way.

三、复述课文。根据课文 Read and Write 的内容,用合适的单词或词组补全短文。

Wu Yifan and Mike are hungry. They want to eat some pizza in an Italian restaurant. The restaurant is next to the park on Dongfang Street. Now they are 1. _____ the cinema. But how can they get there? Ooh! Robin has GPS and he can help the boys find the way. First, they 2. _____ and 3. _____ at the bookstore. Then they are 4. _____ the hospital. They 5. _____ at the hospital. And then they 6. _____ again and go straight. They can see the restaurant on the right.

四、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

A: I'm in front of the library. Where's the zoo?

B: It's next to the restaurant.

A: How can I get to the restaurant?

B: Go straight and turn right at the cinema. Then turn left. You can see the restaurant and the zoo.

A: Thanks a lot.

任务一:阅读对话,选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

() 1. A is _____ the library.

A. next to

B. behind

C. in front of

() 2. The _____ is next to the restaurant.

A. library

B. zoo

C. park

任务二:写出去动物园途中要经过的地方。

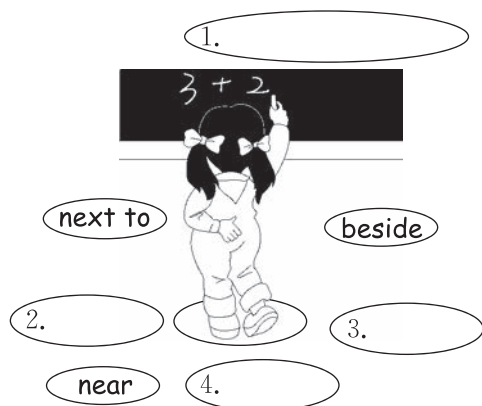
library → _____ → _____ → zoo



B. Let's check Let's wrap it up

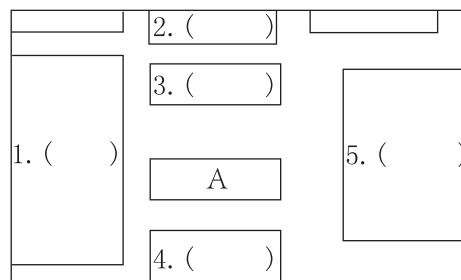
一、看图,选择合适的方位词(组)填空。

in front of behind left right



二、阅读短文,完成地图,把字母序号填入相应的括号里。

Hello! I have GPS now! Look! This is a map of my town. There is a bookstore in my town. The post office is in front of the bookstore. On the left of the bookstore, there is a science museum. On the right of the bookstore, there is a school. The cinema is behind the bookstore. And behind the cinema, there is a hospital.



图示: behind
left ↔ right
front
A. bookstore
B. hospital
C. cinema
D. school
E. post office
F. science museum

C. Story time

阅读课本本单元故事,按要求完成下列任务。

任务一:根据故事内容,回答下列问题。

1. What does Zoom want to buy?

2. Where can he buy it?

任务二:根据故事内容,用合适的单词或词组补全短文。

The fish and chips looks 1. _____. Zoom can buy some 2. _____ the London Eye. The London Eye is 3. _____ near the Thames. It's not so far. But how can Zoom get there? First, 4. _____. Then, 5. _____. Finally Zoom buys three 6. _____ portions of fish and chips and one 7. _____ one. He eats too much. His stomach hurts, but he still misses his tanghulu!

任务三:选择正确的答案补全句子,将其序号填入题前括号里。

A. Thames B. London Eye C. Fish and chips D. Tanghulu

- () 1. _____ is a traditional food in Britain. It's tasty.
() 2. _____ is a Chinese traditional food. It's very sweet.
() 3. The _____ is a famous river in Britain.
() 4. The _____ is a very large Ferris wheel(摩天轮) by the Thames in London. It's 135 meters high.



单元检测



Listening Part



听力音频

一、听录音,选择你所听到的句子中含有的单词或词组,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. A. museum B. post office C. bookstore
() 2. A. postcard B. post office C. teachers' office
() 3. A. cinema B. bookstore C. hospital
() 4. A. turn left B. turn right C. go straight
() 5. A. how B. what C. where

二、听短对话,为小朋友们选出他/她要去的地点,将其序号填入图下括号里。

- A. hospital B. post office C. film museum D. cinema
E. zoo F. supermarket

1. () 2. () 3. () 4. ()

三、听录音,选择与你所听到的内容相符的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. A. 中国邮政 B. 书店 C.
() 2. A. B. C.
() 3. A. B. C.

四、听对话,根据对话内容补全下列句子。

1. Amy is going to the _____.
2. Amy wants to buy a _____.
3. The post office is _____ the museum.
4. There is a robot show in the _____.
5. Mike and Amy are going to meet at the school gate at _____ p.m.



Writing Part

五、判断下列句子的语调是否正确,正确的打“√”,错误的打“×”。

- () 1. Come in, please! () 2. Robin has GPS.
() 3. Where is the cinema? () 4. Is it far?

六、看图,圈出与图片对应的地点单词。

p	a	h	d	g	f	n	p	o	c
b	o	o	k	s	t	o	r	e	i
c	j	s	b	e	h	r	s	q	n
k	t	p	t	z	g	q	u	w	e
v	u	i	f	o	h	r	t	v	m
x	w	t	e	o	f	s	x	g	a
z	p	a	r	k	i	f	f	y	p
y	l	l	i	l	k	j	i	e	c
a	c	m	d	n	m	a	z	c	d
b	m	u	s	e	u	m	o	b	e





七、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. What an _____ picture!
A. big B. interesting C. heavy
- () 2. Come to the bookstore. It's _____ the cinema.
A. next to B. next C. in front
- () 3. Please turn right at the bank. Go straight and turn right _____.
A. also B. too C. again
- () 4. Come _____ me tonight.
A. with B. and C. or
- () 5. You can turn left at _____.
A. there B. here C. the park

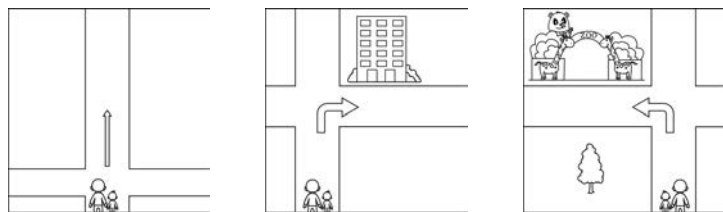
八、给下列问句选择合适的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- A. Yes, it can.
B. In the hospital.
C. No, it's very far from here.
D. I can go straight for ten minutes and turn left.

- () 1. Where can I find your father?
() 2. Is the shop near here?
() 3. How can you get to the post office?
() 4. Can GPS help you find a place?

九、阅读短文,根据图片提示填空。

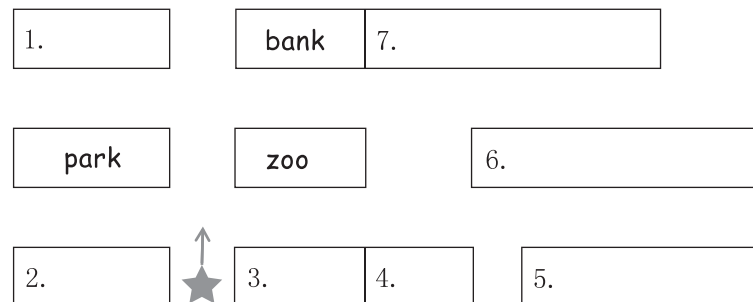
Tom and his father are going to the zoo. They don't know how to get there, so they ask a policeman, "Excuse me. Where is the zoo?" The policeman says, "First, 1. _____. Then, 2. _____. And then 3. _____. The zoo is on your right."



十、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

My name's Mike. This is a map of my city. Look! This is the bookstore. It's next to the library. There are many books in the library. I often read books in it on the weekend. There is a post office on the right of the library. You can send letters and postcards here. The science museum is behind the post office. There are some talking robots in the museum. They are so interesting. The zoo is on the left of the museum. The park is between the cinema and the school. There is a bank near the cinema. The hospital is next to the bank. It's behind the science museum.

任务一:根据短文完成地图,将表示地点的单词或词组写在相应的方框里。



任务二:书面表达。假如你是 Mike,放学后你要从学校出发去医院看望爷爷。请根据地图完成下面短文。要求:准确表述步行去医院的路线。

My name's Mike. I want to go to the hospital to visit my grandpa. I start from my school. First, I _____



Unit 2 Ways to go to school

A. Let's try Let's talk

一、选择可以替换句中画线部分同类选项,将其序号填在相应的横线上。(有两项多余)

A. train B. foot C. often D. taxi E. walk F. usually
G. subway H. ship I. go J. sometimes K. talk L. plane

1. I often go there by bus. _____
2. Twelve students always walk to school. _____
3. Do you often come to the bookstore? _____

二、根据图片选择正确的选项,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Sometimes I come by bike. Usually I _____.

A. walk B. by car C. by subway



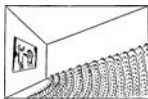
- () 2. Sometimes my parents go to Beijing _____.

A. by car B. by bus C. on foot



三、判断下列对话与图片是否相符,相符的打“√”,不相符的打“×”。

- () 1. —How do you come to the library?
—Usually I come on foot.



- () 2. —Walking is good exercise.
—You're right.



四、给下列对话选择合适的地点,将其序号填入题前括号里。

A. At home.

B. At school.

- () 1. —How do you come to school? —I usually come by bus.
() 2. —How do you go to school? —I usually go by bike.

五、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在相应的横线上。

A. I often come to school by bus. B. Good morning, Sam.
C. How do you come to school? D. What about you?

John: 1. _____

Sam: Good morning, John. You are so early! 2. _____

John: I usually come to school on foot. Sometimes I come by bike. 3. _____

Sam: 4. _____

六、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

Miss White: How do you come to the bookstore?

Jack: I usually walk, but sometimes I come by bus.

Lucy: I often come by bike. Sometimes I come by taxi.

Lily: Usually I come by bus. Sometimes I come on foot.

任务一:阅读对话,完成表格。用“√√√”表示“usually”,用“√√”表示“often”,用“√”表示“sometimes”。

	By bike	By bus	By taxi	On foot
Jack				
Lucy				
Lily				

任务二:请根据实际情况回答问题。

How do you come to the bookstore?



A. Let's learn Write and say

一、根据图片写出相应的词组,完成句子。

1. Usually I go to the zoo _____.



2. We can get to Yichang _____
from Chongqing.



3. People usually go to the UK _____
from Beijing.



4. Sometimes I come to school _____.



5. Mrs Smith often goes to work _____.



6. My school is near my home. I always go to
school _____.



7. Do you often go to Chengdu _____?



二、根据句意选出正确的单词或词组将句子补充完整。

- Let's _____ (go/get) to the cinema.
- How do you get to school _____ (for/from) your home?
- I usually get _____ (there/the USA) by plane.

三、按要求完成下列各题。

1. go, I, the, to, museum, by, usually, bike (.) (连词成句)

2. good, Walking, is, exercise (.) (连词成句)

3. I often walk to the library. (改为同义句)

4. I usually get to the cinema by car from my home. (对画线部分提问)

5. How do you often come to school? (根据自身实际情况作答)

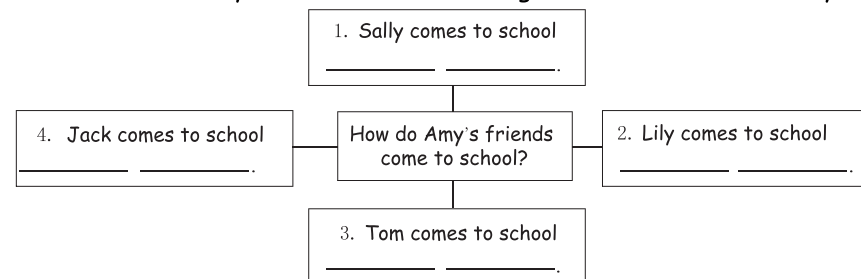
四、看表格,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

Name	From	How	To
Sarah	home	on foot	park
Amy	cinema	by subway	post office
Mike and John	bookstore	by bus	museum
Oliver	China	by plane	the UK

- () 1. Hello, I'm Sarah. I go to the park from my home on foot.
- () 2. Hello, I'm Amy. I'm in the cinema. I want to go to the post office by subway.
- () 3. Hello, we are Mike and John. We are in the museum. We go to the bookstore by bus.
- () 4. Oliver comes to China by plane.

五、阅读短文,完成思维导图。

Hello, I'm Amy. I have four friends. They are Sally, Lily, Tom and Jack. Sally lives near the school. She comes to school on foot. There is a subway station near Lily's home. She comes to school by subway. Tom lives far from the school. He comes to school by bus. Jack likes riding. He comes to school by bike.



阶段复习训练



Listening Part



听力音频

一、听录音,选择正确的问句或答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. A. How do you go to the park? B. How do you come to school?
C. How do you go home?
- () 2. A. Three students come to school by bus.
B. Four students come to school on foot.
C. Five students come to school by subway.
- () 3. A. By plane. B. That's good exercise. C. Hooray!

二、听录音,判断下列人物与其出行方式是否相符,相符的打“√”,不相符的打“×”。



三、听对话,判断下列各题是否正确,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

- () 1. —Is there a bookstore near here? —Yes, there is.
- () 2. —How can I get there? —You can get there by subway.
- () 3. —Can I go by bus? —Sure. You can take the No. 18 bus.
- () 4. —Where is the bus stop?
—Turn left at the tall building. It's very near.

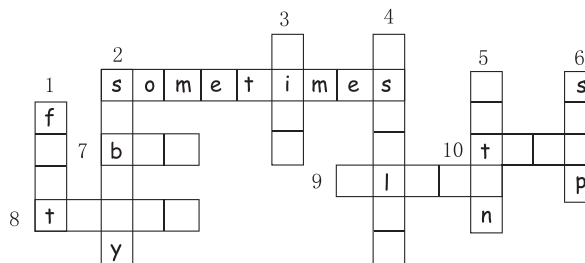
四、听短文,在表格相应的栏里填上正确的学生人数。(填阿拉伯数字)

Ways to come to school	A.	B.	C.	D.	E.
How many students?					



Writing Part

五、根据提示补全单词。



Tips(小提示):

1 是表示身体部位的词。2、3、6、7、8、9、10 是表示交通工具的词。4 和 5 是表示频率的词。





六、从下列图片中选择与所给单词同类的一项,将其序号填入题前括号里。



- () 1. Canada China () 2. plane car
() 3. cinema school () 4. foot arm

七、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. How _____ you go to the supermarket?
A. do B. are C. is
- () 2. Sometimes I go _____ by bus.
A. to home B. house C. home
- () 3. How do they get to _____ from Canada?
A. Chinese B. the USA C. American
- () 4. Running is _____.
A. a good exercise B. good exercise C. good exercises

八、根据下表将对话补充完整。

Name	How	Place
Mike	by bike	park
John	by subway	school
Chen Jie	by bus	zoo
Oliver	by train	Guangzhou

1. —Hi, Mike. How do you go to the park?
—I usually go to the park _____.
2. —John, _____?
—_____.
3. —How do you get to the zoo from your home, Chen Jie?
—_____.
4. —Hello, Oliver. _____?
—_____.

九、用数字给下列句子排序。

- () Then how do you go to school?
(1) Where is your school?
() My school is near the park.
() Yes, it is.
() Is it far from here?
() I often go to school by bus.

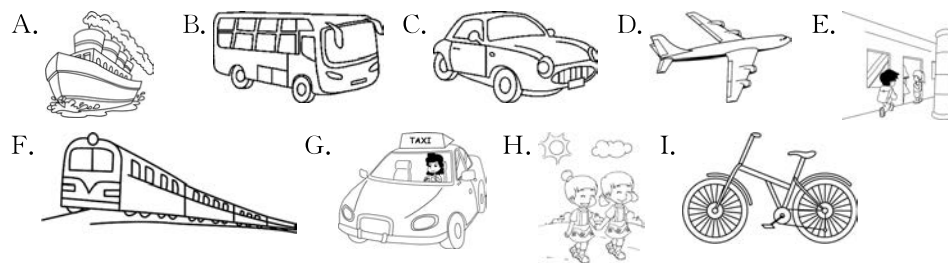
十、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

There are many ways to get somewhere. If you want to go someplace in your city, you can go on foot, by bike, by bus or by car. It's very fast to go by taxi, but it's a bit expensive. Going by subway is a good idea, but you should make sure there is a subway station nearby. When you go to other cities, you can go by plane, by train or by ship. It's very fast to go by plane, but it's expensive. If you have a lot of time, you can go by train or by ship. It's so nice to have so many ways to travel.

任务一:根据短文内容,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

- () 1. There are many ways to get somewhere.
() 2. It's very fast to go by bus, but it's a bit expensive.
() 3. If you have a lot of time, you can go by plane.
() 4. It's so nice to have so many ways to travel.

任务二:根据短文内容,将正确图片的序号填在相应的横线上。



1. If you want to go someplace in your city, you can go _____.
2. When you go to other cities, you'd better (最好) go _____ because they're very far.





B. Let's try Let's talk



一、给下列标识选择合适的含义,将其序号填入图下括号里。



1. ()



2. ()



3. ()



4. ()

- | | |
|--|----------------------|
| A. Look right before you cross the road. | B. Stop. |
| C. Don't touch the door. | D. Don't turn right. |

二、选择正确的单词或词组,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- A. pictures B. cousin C. pay attention to D. the USA E. coming

- () 1. Look! The bus is _____.
- () 2. So many _____ of cats!
- () 3. In _____ people on bikes must wear a helmet.
- () 4. We must _____ the traffic lights.
- () 5. It's from my _____ in China.

三、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. You can see this _____ the road in Hong Kong.
A. on B. at C. to
- () 2. You can _____ the No. 8 bus to the science museum.
A. go B. take C. come
- () 3. You can see this sign _____ the subway.
A. out B. with C. in

- () 4. The stamps are _____ my cousin _____ the USA.

- A. from; to B. from; in C. of; on

四、复述课文。根据课文 Let's try 和 Let's talk 的内容,用合适的单词补全短文。

Wu Yifan's grandpa is ill. He wants to go to the Fuxing Hospital. Mr Jones tells him to 1. _____ the No. 57 bus to the hospital. He shows Yifan many pictures 2. _____ bikes. They're 3. _____ his cousin in the USA. In the USA people 4. _____ bikes must wear a 5. _____. The bus is coming. Yifan says goodbye to Mr Jones. Mr Jones tells Yifan not to go 6. _____ the red light. We 7. _____ pay attention to the traffic lights.

五、阅读对话,完成下列句子。

Mike: Excuse me. How can I get to the museum?

Amy: You can take the No. 120 bus.

Mike: Where is the bus stop?

Amy: Go to the library. The bus stop is in front of it.

Mike: Is it far?

Amy: No. Walk straight for five minutes. It's on the right.

Mike: Thanks a lot.

Amy: You are welcome.

1. Mike wants to go to the _____.
2. Mike can take the No. 120 _____.
3. The library is _____ the bus stop.
4. The bus stop is not _____.





B. Let's learn Role-play

一、判断下列句子是否正确,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

- () 1. Slow down and stop at a yellow light.
- () 2. Stop and wait at a green light.
- () 3. Don't go at a red light.
- () 4. Look left first and then right before you cross the road in Beijing.
- () 5. Don't touch the door in the subway.

二、给下列句子选择合适的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. I usually walk to school.
- () 2. How can I get to the science museum from the cinema?
- () 3. Don't cross the street. It's a red light now.
- () 4. Oh, the park is over there! Let's go!
- () 5. Can I go to the bookstore on foot?

- A. Take the No. 401 bus over there. B. Oh, right! Thanks.
C. Me too. That's good exercise. D. No. It's too far. Go by taxi.
E. Please wait! We must stop and wait at the red light.

三、根据句意用 come、go 将下列句子补充完整。

- 1. My home is near the supermarket. I always _____ there on foot.
- 2. _____ here. Let's make a puppet together.

- 3. Please _____ at a green light.
- 4. Let's _____ to the cinema this afternoon.
- 5. I'm at the zoo. How do you _____ and meet me at the zoo?
- 6. How do people _____ to Australia from China?

四、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在相应的横线上。

Zoom: It is Sunday today. Let's go to the park!

Zip: But how can we get to the park?

Zoom: Turn right at the cinema, and then go straight.

Zip: OK. 1. _____ It's a yellow light.

Zoom: The traffic light is red now. 2. _____

Zip: Yeah! It's green. 3. _____

A. Slow down and stop!

B. Let's go!

C. Stop and wait!

五、阅读短文,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

The traffic lights are the same in every country. There are three lights: a red light, a yellow light and a green light. In China and the USA, people drive on the right side of the road. But in the UK, Japan and Australia, people drive on the left side of the road.

- () 1. The traffic lights are the same in every country.
- () 2. The traffic lights are red, yellow and green.
- () 3. In the USA, drivers drive on the left side of the road.
- () 4. In China, drivers drive on the right side of the road.
- () 5. In Australia, drivers drive on the left side of the road.



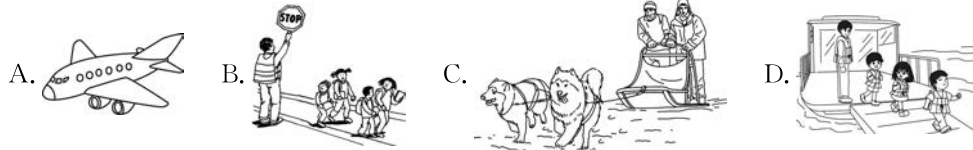
B. Read and write

一、将下列单词变一个字母或加一个字母,变成表示交通工具的单词。

1. cat _____ 2. but _____ 3. plate _____
4. rain _____ 5. like _____ 6. shop _____

二、给下列句子选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Some children in Jiangxi, China, go to school by ferry.
() 2. Some children go to school on foot in Munich, Germany.
() 3. Some kids go to school by sled in Alaska, USA.
() 4. Kids in Papa Westray, Scotland in 2009 went to school by plane because the ferry didn't work.



三、判断下列对话与图片是否相符,相符的打“√”,不相符的打“×”。

- () 1. —What's your mother doing?
—She's reading a book for my baby brother.



- () 2. —Where does your brother learn?
—He learns at home.



- () 3. —What's the weather like there?
—It snows a lot.



- () 4. —Is it fast by sled?
—Yes, it is.



四、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

My name's Lingling. I am a student in Bashu Primary School. I live in Shangqingsi Road. My home is not very far from my school. I usually go to school by bus because it's very cheap. Sometimes I go to school by taxi. It's very fast, but it's very expensive. Sometimes I take the No. 2 subway to school. It's very fast. My father is a doctor. He works in the No. 6 Hospital. It is far from our home. He always goes to work by car. My mother is a teacher. She works in Renmin Primary School. It's near our home, so my mother usually walks to school. Sometimes she goes by bike.

任务一:根据短文内容,回答下列问题。(用完整句子回答)

1. Is Lingling's home far from her school?

2. How does Lingling usually go to school? Why?

3. Is the No. 6 Hospital near Lingling's home?

4. Where is Renmin Primary School?

5. How does Lingling's mother go to work?

任务二:仿照短文,写一写你和家人每日出行的交通方式。要求不少于5句话。



B. Read and write & Tips for pronunciation



一、仿照例句,找出每句中可以连读的部分并标注出来。

例: In Alaska, USA, it snows a lot.

- Look! The bus is coming!
- The park is over there.
- Don't look out of the window!

二、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. I _____ go to school. I learn at home.
A. aren't B. don't C. am
- () 2. You _____ stop at a red light.
A. must B. can't C. don't

三、根据表格内容,仿照例句造句。

	😊	☹️
on foot	stop at a red light	go at a red light
by ferry	wear a life jacket	run on the ferry
by sled	drive slowly	let the dogs run too fast
by motorbike	wear a helmet	ride too fast

例: on foot: 😊—You must stop at a red light.

☹️—Don't go at a red light.

1. by ferry: 😊—You must wear a life jacket.

☹️—

2. by sled: 😊—

☹️—Don't let the dogs run too fast.

3. by motorbike: 😊—

☹️—

四、用合适的单词补全对话,将其填在相应的横线上。(每空一词)

Amy: Hey, Bob. School is over. Let's go home.

Bob: OK. How do you go home?

Amy: I 1. _____ home.

Bob: 2. _____ your home near our school?

Amy: Yeah. My home is behind our school. 3. _____ do you go home?

Bob: I go by bike.

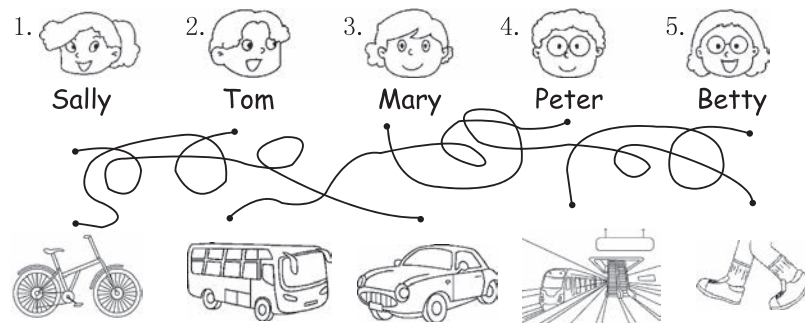
Amy: Really? Do you know the traffic rules?

Bob: Yes, I do. Stop and wait at a 4. _____ light. Slow down and stop at a

5. _____ light. Go at a 6. _____ light.

Amy: Yes, you are right! We must pay attention to the traffic 7. _____.

五、看图,仿照例子写一写。



例:—How do you come to school, Sally? —I come to school by car.

1. —How do you come to school, Tom? —I come to school _____.

2. —How do you _____, Mary?

—I _____.

3. —How _____, Peter?

—I _____.

4. — _____ — _____





B. Let's check Let's wrap it up



一、根据句意,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

1. John is going to the post office.

() John is at the post office.

() John is not at the post office.

2. How can I go to the bookstore?

() I am at the bookstore.

() I'm not at the bookstore.

3. How do you come to the museum to meet me?

() I am at the museum.

() I am not at the museum.

二、给下列对话选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。

() 1. —How does your father go to work? —Usually by subway.

() 2. —How can I get to the park? —Take the No. 25 bus.

() 3. —How do you go home? —I usually go home on foot.

() 4. —Don't cross the street now! It's a red light. —OK!

A.



B.



C.



D.



C. Story time



阅读课本本单元故事,按要求完成下列任务。

任务一:根据故事内容,回答下列问题。

1. Is Chinese food the same as British food?

2. Can Annie use chopsticks?

3. How do they go home?

4. Do people drive on the right side of the road in the UK?

5. Must we look right before crossing the road in China?

任务二:根据故事内容,用合适的单词补全短文。

Some traffic rules in China are so different 1. _____ those in the UK. In China people drive on the 2. _____ side of the road. The doors on the buses are on the 3. _____ side, so people get on the bus on the right. But in the UK people drive on the 4. _____ side. The doors on the buses are on the 5. _____ side, so people get on the bus on the left. When people cross the road in China, they must look 6. _____ and then 7. _____. But in the UK people must look 8. _____ and then 9. _____.





单元检测



Listening Part

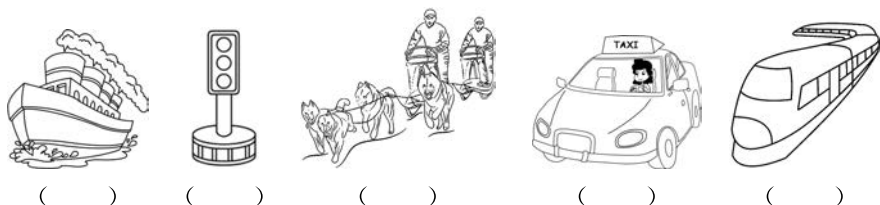


听力音频

一、听录音,选择你所听到的句子中含有的单词或词组,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| () 1. A. by | B. bus | C. bike |
| () 2. A. fat | B. far | C. fast |
| () 3. A. pay | B. plane | C. plant |
| () 4. A. a green light | B. a red light | C. a yellow light |
| () 5. A. a life boat | B. a helmet | C. a life jacket |

二、听录音,用数字给下列图片排序。



三、听对话,根据你所听到的内容,完成信息表。

- | | 1. | 2. | 3. | vehicle |
|----------|----------|-------|-------|---------|
| Name: | Wu Yifan | John | Mike | |
| Place: | _____ | _____ | _____ | 交通 |
| Vehicle: | _____ | _____ | _____ | 工具 |

四、听短文,根据短文内容补全下列句子。

- Jack usually goes to school _____.
- Jack usually _____ basketball after school.

- Jack's father is a _____.
- Jack's father usually goes to work _____. Sometimes he goes _____.
- Jack and his father go to the nature park _____ every weekend.



Writing Part

五、找出每句中可以连读的部分并标注出来。

- She will stop and wait.
- Come and meet my family!
- I have an apple.
- You must stop at a red light.

六、在横线上写出两个可以替换句中画线部分的单词。

- Some children go to school by subway. _____
- I always go to school on foot. _____
- Look! It's red now. You must pay attention to the traffic lights before you cross the street. _____
- Don't run on the ferry. _____

七、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- Mrs Smith usually _____ to school. That's good exercise.
A. walk B. walks C. by bike
- Sometimes I go to the zoo _____.
A. by foot B. on foot C. on feet
- _____ and meet my new classmate. Let's play together.
A. Come B. Go C. Read

() 4. You must look left and then right _____ you cross the road.

A. near B. before C. after

() 5. I often _____ the No. 405 bus to school. Sometimes I go _____ subway.

A. by; by B. by; on C. take; by

八、给下列问句选择相应的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- A. They go to school by ferry.
B. She will cross the road.
C. Usually I go to school by subway.
D. It's near. You can go to the library on foot.
E. It's a sled. We can use it in winter.

() 1. How do you go to school?

() 2. What's this?

() 3. How can I get to the library?

() 4. What will your mother do?

() 5. How do the children in Jiangxi go to school?

九、按要求完成下列各题。

1. Let's take a bus home. (改为同义句)

2. Let the dogs run fast. (改为否定句)

3. I often go to school by ferry. (对画线部分提问)

十、下图是 Sam 班上的同学上学交通方式的调查图(每位同学只用一种交通方式上学)。看图,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

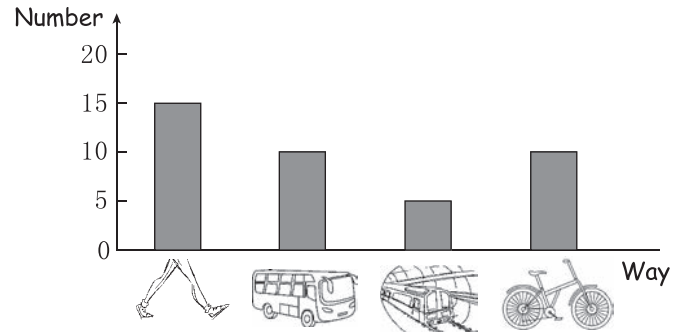
() 1. Fifty students come to school on foot.

() 2. Ten students come to school by bus.

() 3. No student comes to school by car in Sam's class.

() 4. Twenty students come to school by bike.

() 5. There are forty students in Sam's class.



十一、根据对话内容将下表补充完整。

Amy: It's sunny today. I want to go to the nature park.

Sarah: How can you get there?

Amy: I can get there by bus. Where will you go?

Sarah: I will go to the library. It's near. I'll go by bike.

Amy: How about Mike? Where does he want to go?

Sarah: He wants to go to the bookstore.

Amy: Is it near?

Sarah: Yes, it's near. He can go on foot.

Amy: Does John want to go to the bookstore, too?

Sarah: No. He wants to go to the museum. It's so far. He can go by taxi.

Name	Where	How
1. _____	nature park	by bus
Sarah	library	2. _____
Mike	3. _____	on foot
John	museum	4. _____



本书听力材料及参考答案

Unit 1 How can I get there?

A. Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. —C 2. —B 3. —D 4. —A
 二、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. C
 三、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A
 四、1. behind 2. next to 3. near 4. behind
 5. next to
 五、1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A

A. Let's learn Make a map and talk

- 一、1. B 2. A 3. E 4. D 5. C
 二、1. science museum; bookstore
 2. hospital 3. behind
 三、3 (1) 5 2 4
 四、1. library 2. museum 3. bookstore
 五、略

阶段复习训练

[听力材料]

- 一、1. Let's go to the post office.
 2. I want to read books in the library.
 3. There is a big cinema. We can see a film there.
 4. What a big hospital!
 5. There is a talking robot in the science museum.
 6. We can buy books in the bookstore.
 二、1. The park is next to the zoo.
 2. I want to send a letter today.
 3. Do you like this postcard?
 4. My parents are in the bookstore.
 三、1. Where are the students?
 2. Is Grandma there?
 3. Where is the cinema?
 4. Is there a hospital near here?
 四、There is a supermarket in the middle. The cinema is in front of the supermarket. The park is near the cinema on the right. The bookstore is near the cinema on the left. The museum is behind the supermarket. The bus stop is next to the museum.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. 2. 3. 4.
 5. 6.
 二、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B
 三、D A C B
 四、1. F 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C
 五、1. A C D G I 2. B F H
 六、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C

- 七、1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. × 4. ✓

- 八、1. I want to buy a postcard.
 2. The cinema is next to the bookstore. / The bookstore is next to the cinema.
 3. Is there a pet hospital near the school?
 4. Where are your classmates?
 5. What a great museum!

- 九、1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C

- 十、1. bookstore 2. post office 3. cinema
 4. hospital 5. library

B. Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. C 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. A
 二、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. D
 三、1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C
 四、1. go straight 2. turn left
 3. Turn right

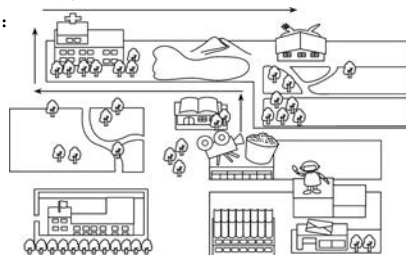
B. Let's learn Be a tour guide

- 一、1. go straight 2. turn right
 3. turn left 4. crossing
 二、1. A 2. C
 三、A. park B. museum C. cinema
 D. Xinhua Bookstore
 四、1. C 2. A 3. B

B. Read and write

- 一、1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B
 二、1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A
 三、1. D 2. E 3. A 4. C 5. B
 四、任务一：1. restaurant 2. cinema 3. bookstore
 4. hospital

任务二：



B. Read and write & Tips for pronunciation

- 一、1. —C 2. —B 3. —A 4. —D
 二、1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A
 三、1. in front of 2. go straight 3. turn left
 4. behind 5. turn right 6. turn right
 四、任务一：1. C 2. B
 任务二：cinema restaurant

B. Let's check Let's wrap it up

- 一、1. in front of 2. left 3. right 4. behind
 二、1. F 2. B 3. C 4. E 5. D



C. Story time

任务一: 1. He wants to buy some fish and chips.

2. Near the London Eye.

任务二: 1. tasty 2. near 3. next to the film museum

4. go straight 5. turn left 6. large

7. small

任务三: 1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B

单元检测

[听力材料]

一、1. I want to buy a book in the bookstore.

2. How can he get there from the post office?

3. Is there a cinema near here?

4. Go straight for ten minutes, and you'll see it.

5. What is Robin's new feature?

二、1. M: I'm Mike. How can I get to the post office?

W: Turn right at the zoo.

2. W: I'm Sarah. Is there a cinema near here?

M: Yes. It's next to the supermarket.

3. M: I'm Wu Yifan. Where is the film museum?

W: It's behind the hospital.

4. W: I'm Chen Jie. Is the hospital far from here?

M: No, it's very near.

三、1. I want to go to the bookstore to buy some books.

2. There is GPS in my father's car.

3. Turn right at the zoo. Then you can see the park.

四、Amy: Hi, Mike. I'm going to the post office.

Mike: What do you want to do there, Amy?

Amy: I want to buy a postcard. Would you like to go with me?

Mike: Certainly! Where is it?

Amy: It's next to the museum. There is a robot show in the museum today. We can go and have a look.

Mike: Great! When?

Amy: At 3:00 in the afternoon. We can meet at the school gate at 1:00.

Mike: OK. See you then.

Amy: See you.

[参考答案]

一、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B

二、1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A

三、1. B 2. C 3. B

四、1. post office 2. postcard 3. next to 4. museum 5. 1

五、1. √ 2. √ 3. × 4. √

六、

p	a	h	d	g	f	n	p	o	c
b	o	o	k	s	t	o	r	e	i
c	j	s	b	e	h	r	s	q	n
k	t	p	t	z	g	q	u	w	e
v	u	i	f	o	h	r	t	v	m
x	w	t	e	o	f	s	x	g	a
z	p	a	r	k	i	f	f	y	p
y	l	l	i	l	k	j	i	e	c
a	c	m	d	n	m	a	z	c	d
b	m	u	s	e	u	m	o	b	e

(bookstore hospital zoo post office museum cinema park)

七、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C

八、1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A

九、1. go straight 2. turn right 3. turn left

十、任务一: 1. cinema 2. school 3. bookstore

4. library 5. post office

6. science museum 7. hospital

任务二: My name's Mike. I want to go to the hospital to visit my grandpa. I start from my school. First, I go straight and turn right at the zoo. Then I go straight again. I can see the hospital on my left. (仅供参考)

Unit 2 Ways to go to school

A. Let's try Let's talk

一、1. A D G H L 2. C F J 3. E I

二、1. A 2. B

三、1. × 2. √

四、1. B 2. A

五、1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A

六、任务一:

	By bike	By bus	By taxi	On foot
Jack		√		√√√
Lucy	√√		√	
Lily		√√√		√

任务二: I usually come to the bookstore on foot. Sometimes I come by bike. (答案不唯一)

A. Let's learn Write and say

一、1. by subway 2. by ship 3. by plane

4. by bus 5. by taxi 6. on foot 7. by train

二、1. go 2. from 3. there

三、1. I usually go to the museum by bike.

2. Walking is good exercise.

3. I often go/come to the library on foot.

4. How do you usually get to the cinema from your home?

5. I often come to school by subway. (答案不唯一)





本书听力材料及参考答案

四、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F

五、1. on foot 2. by subway
3. by bus 4. by bike

阶段复习训练

[听力材料]

- 一、1. I come to school by car.
2. How many students come to school by bus?
3. How do you get to the USA from China?
- 二、1. I'm Mike. I go to school by subway.
2. I'm John. I go to the bookstore by bike.
3. I'm Sarah. I go to Wuhan by train.
4. I'm Wu Yifan. I go to the park by bus.
- 三、W: Excuse me. Is there a bookstore near here?
M: Yes, there is.
W: How can I get there?
M: You can go there on foot.
W: Can I go by bus?
M: Sure. You can take the No. 8 bus.
W: Where is the bus stop?
M: Turn left at the tall building. It's very near.
W: Thank you very much.
M: You are welcome.
- 四、There are forty-six students in my class. Twelve students usually come to school by school bus. Eight students come to school by bike. Six of my classmates live far from our school. They come by subway. Four students come to school by car. Sixteen students walk to school. My home is near my school, so I usually walk to school.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. B 2. A 3. A
二、1. √ 2. × 3. √ 4. ×
三、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T
四、A. 8 B. 4 C. 12 D. 6 E. 16
五、1. foot 2. subway 3. bike 4. usually
5. often 6. ship 7. bus 8. train
9. plane 10. taxi
六、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. D
七、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B
八、1. by bike
2. how do you go to school;
I usually go to school by subway
3. I usually get to the zoo by bus
4. How do you get/go to Guangzhou;
I usually get/go to Guangzhou by train
- 九、5 (1) 2 4 3 6
十、任务一: 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T
任务二: 1. B C E G H I 2. A D F

B. Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A
二、1. E 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B
三、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B

四、1. take 2. of 3. from 4. on 5. helmet
6. at 7. must

五、1. museum 2. bus 3. behind 4. far

B. Let's learn Role-play

- 一、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
二、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. E 5. D
三、1. go 2. Come 3. go 4. go
5. come 6. go/come
四、1. A 2. C 3. B
五、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T

B. Read and write

- 一、1. car 2. bus 3. plane 4. train 5. bike
6. ship
二、1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A
三、1. √ 2. √ 3. × 4. √
四、任务一: 1. No, it isn't.
2. She usually goes to school by bus because it's very cheap.
3. No, it isn't.
4. It's near Lingling's home.
5. She usually goes to work on foot. Sometimes she goes by bike.

任务二: 略

B. Read and write & Tips for pronunciation

- 一、1. Look! The bus is coming!
2. The park is over there.
3. Don't look out of the window!
- 二、1. B 2. A
三、1. Don't run on the ferry.
2. You must drive slowly.
3. You must wear a helmet.
Don't ride too fast.
- 四、1. walk 2. Is 3. How 4. red 5. yellow
6. green 7. lights
五、1. by bike
2. come to school; come to school on foot
3. do you come to school; come to school by bus
4. —How do you come to school, Betty?
—I come to school by subway.

B. Let's check Let's wrap it up

- 一、1. F T 2. F T 3. T F
二、1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C

C. Story time

- 任务一: 1. No. Chinese food is so different from British food.
2. No, she can't.
3. They take a bus home./ They go home by bus.
4. No, they don't. They drive on the left side.
5. No, first left and then right.





任务二: 1. from 2. right 3. right 4. left 5. left
6. left 7. right 8. right 9. left

单元检测

[听力材料]

- 一、1. They often go to school by subway.
2. Some kids go to school by sled. It's fast.
3. They went to school by plane because the ferry didn't work.
4. You must stop at a red light.
5. You must wear a life jacket.
- 二、1. You must pay attention to the traffic lights.
2. Sometimes I go to school by taxi.
3. He goes to Shanghai by ship.
4. They get to Beijing by train.
5. They get there by sled.
- 三、1. M: How does Wu Yifan go to school?
W: He goes to school by bus.
2. M: How does John go to Wuhan?
W: He goes by train.
3. M: How does Mike go to Canada?
W: He goes to Canada by plane.
- 四、My friend Jack is eleven. He comes from London. He usually goes to school by subway. He wants to be a basketball player. After school, he usually plays basketball. His father is a doctor. He goes to work early and gets back home late. He usually goes to work by bus. Sometimes he goes by bike. Jack and his father go to the nature park on foot every weekend.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. C
二、3 1 5 2 4
三、1. school bus 2. Wuhan train
3. Canada plane
四、1. by subway 2. plays 3. doctor
4. by bus; by bike 5. on foot
五、1. She will stop and wait.
2. Come and meet my family!
3. I have an apple.
4. You must stop at a red light.
六、1. bus, taxi 2. often, usually 3. yellow, green
4. ship, boat (1, 2, 4 小题答案不唯一)
七、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C
八、1. C 2. E 3. D 4. B 5. A
九、1. Let's go home by bus.
2. Don't let the dogs run fast.
3. How do you often go to school?
十、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
十一、1. Amy 2. by bike 3. bookstore 4. by taxi

Unit 3 My weekend plan

A. Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. do 2. draw 3. have 4. go 5. make 6. have

二、1. C 2. A 3. A

三、1. is 2. am 3. are 4. are 5. is

四、1. A: What is she going to do?

B: She is going to wash clothes.

2. A: What is he going to do?

B: He is going to swim.

五、1. on 2. go swimming 3. see a film

4. do his homework 5. have an art lesson

6. draw some pictures

A. Let's learn Make a plan

一、1. visit 2. trip 3. film 4. supermarket

二、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A

三、任务一: 1. —D 2. —B 3. —C 4. —A

任务二: 1. T 2. F 3. T

四、My name's Mike. I am going to do my homework tomorrow morning. I'm going to wash my clothes tomorrow afternoon. Tomorrow morning my father is going to read books and my mother is going to the supermarket. Tomorrow afternoon they are going to clean the rooms. Tomorrow evening we are going to watch TV together. (答案不唯一)

阶段复习训练

[听力材料]

一、1. They are going to take a trip.

2. We're going to see a film.

3. I'm going to visit my grandparents.

4. Let's go to the supermarket.

二、1. Can he go ice-skating today?

2. What are you going to do tomorrow?

3. Have a good time!

4. What is Mike going to do tomorrow?

三、1. Mike: What is Wu Yifan going to do this morning?

Chen Jie: He is going to read a book.

2. Wu Yifan: What are you going to do tonight, Sarah?

Sarah: I'm going to watch TV.

3. Sarah: What is Chen Jie going to do tomorrow?

Mike: She is going to see a film.

4. Chen Jie: What are you going to do next weekend, Mike?

Mike: I'm going to wash clothes.

四、Hello, I'm Lily. I'm going to do my homework this morning. I'm going to wash clothes this afternoon. I'm going to see a film this evening. I'm going to the supermarket with my mother tomorrow morning. I'm going to draw pictures tomorrow afternoon. I'm going to watch TV tomorrow evening.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. ☹️ 2. ☹️ 3. 😊 4. 😊





语 文		数 学				英 语			
	R		R	BS	五四制		BJ	RP	WY JK
一年级（上、下）		一年级（上、下）				一年级（上、下）			
二年级（上、下）		二年级（上、下）				二年级（上、下）			
三年级（上、下）		三年级（上、下）				三年级（上、下）			
四年级（上、下）		四年级（上、下）				四年级（上、下）			
五年级（上、下）		五年级（上、下）				五年级（上、下）			
六年级（上、下）		六年级（上、下）				六年级（上、下）	★		



定 价：27.80 元

黄冈小状元达标卷

六年级英语上

同步作业类

6 RP

黄冈小状元达标卷



主编 万志勇

- 单元期中检测卷（共9卷）
- 分类专项复习（4卷）
- 标准化调考模拟试卷（2卷含答题卡）



六年级英语 上

最新修订

龍門書局 | 龙门品牌·学子至爱
www.longmenshuju.com



学校

班级

考号

10

姓名

密

封

线



Unit 1 达标卷

建议时间:40 分钟 满分:100 分








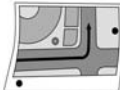









听力音频

Listening Part(40 分)

一、听录音,选择你所听到的句子中含有的单词或短语,将其序号填入题前括号里。(5分)

- () 1. A. **crossing** B. *GPS* C. compass
- () 2. A. **restaurant** B. right C. robot
- () 3. A. like B. library C. left
- () 4. A. turn left B. science museum
C. go straight
- () 5. A. send postcards B. museum shop
C. go to school

二、听录音,选择与你所听到的内容相符的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。(5分)

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|---|----|---|----|--|
| () 1. A. |  | B. |  | C. |  |
| () 2. A. |  | B. |  | C. |  |
| () 3. A. |  | B. |  | C. |  |
| () 4. A. |  | B. |  | C. |  |
| () 5. A. |  | B. |  | C. |  |

三、听录音,选择相应的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。
(10分)

- () 1. A. Yes, there is. B. Yes, it is.
C. Yes, there are.

- () 2. A. Turn left. B. Let's go.
C. It's next to the supermarket.
- () 3. A. Yes, they are. B. Sure.
C. No, it's far.
- () 4. A. It's near the park. B. It's behind the zoo.
C. Turn left at the cinema. Then go straight.
- () 5. A. He can find food. B. He can find the way.
C. He can find people.

四、听录音,根据对话内容选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10 分)

- () 1. Amy wants to go to the _____.
A. library B. cinema C. post office
- () 2. Amy wants to _____.
A. see the talking robot B. send a letter
C. buy a postcard
- () 3. The post office is _____.
A. next to the bookstore
B. behind the bookstore
C. in front of the bookstore
- () 4. Amy should take the _____ bus.
A. No. 1 B. No. 11 C. No. 101
- () 5. Amy should turn right at _____.
A. the first crossing
B. the second crossing
C. the third crossing

五、听录音, 写出所缺单词或短语补全短文。(10 分)

What do you 1. _____ to do on Saturday and Sunday? Please come to the 2. _____. In the museum, you can see many 3. _____ things. You can see 4. _____ stars. You can talk with the 5. _____. You can 6. _____ with your friends. How do you 7. _____ the museum? Well, it is on Third Street. It's 8. _____ the Happy Restaurant. It's 9. _____ the Children's Hospital. It's 10. _____ the Wanda Cinema. It is open from 8:00 to 18:00. Welcome to the museum.

Writing Part(60 分)






六、同类词替换,将其填在相应的横线上。(6分)

bookstore	near	cinema
post office	beside	behind

1. There is a science museum in my city.

2. It's next to the restaurant.

七、根据图片写出单词或短语,将其填在图片下面的横线上。
(5 分)

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

八、看图,在横线上填写合适的单词完成句子。(4分)

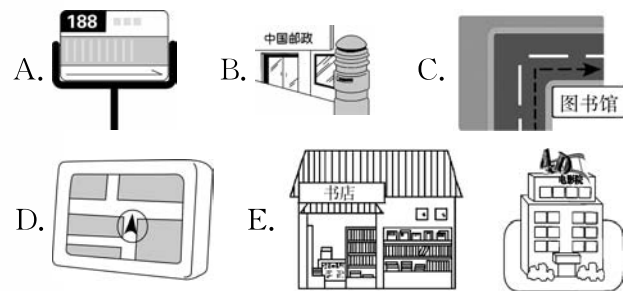
The map shows Zhongshan Street running vertically. To the left of the street, from top to bottom, are: a building with 'university' and 'bookstore'; a building with 'the West Lake Park'; a building with 'clothes shop' and 'bank'; and a building with 'shoe store'. To the right of the street, from top to bottom, are: a building with 'school' and 'restaurant'; a building with 'cinema' and 'coffee shop'; a building with 'science museum' and 'police station'; and a building with 'hospital'. A person is walking on the street, indicated by an upward arrow and a stick figure. The person is positioned between the 'science museum/police station' and 'hospital' buildings.

1. The university is _____ the bookstore.
2. The shoe store is _____ Zhongshan Street.
3. The post office is next to the _____.
4. There is a _____ between the hospital and the restaurant.

九、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10分)

- () 1. I want to see some robots, so I can go to the _____.
A. science museum B. school
C. bookstore
- () 2. —How can I get to the cinema?
—Turn left _____ the hospital.
A. in B. at C. on
- () 3. If you want to read some books, you can go to the _____.
A. post office B. library
C. cinema
- () 4. —Is there a cinema near your home?
—_____.
A. Yes, there isn't B. Yes, there is
C. No, there is
- () 5. The hospital is in front _____ the school.
A. of B. on C. to
- () 6. What _____ interesting film it is!
A. a B. an C. the
- () 7. —Where is John?
—He is _____ the bookstore.
A. of B. for C. in
- () 8. There is a pet hospital _____ my city.
A. on B. of C. in
- () 9. If you want to see a doctor, you can go to the _____.
A. park B. hospital C. restaurant
- () 10. —_____ has GPS? —Robin.
A. Who B. How C. Where

十、完成句子,并给句子选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。(5分)



- () 1. You can send a postcard in the _____.
() 2. There is a _____ near the bookstore.
() 3. _____ at the library.
() 4. My new _____ works.
() 5. You can take the No. _____ over there.

十一、给下列句子选择相应的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。(5分)

- () 1. Where is the Italian restaurant?
() 2. How can I get to the post office?
() 3. Is Grandpa there?
() 4. Where does the boy want to go?
() 5. Is it far?
- A. Yes, he is.
B. No, it's not far.
C. Turn right at the school. Then go straight.
D. He wants to go to the bookstore.
E. It's next to the bank.

十二、用数字给下列句子重新排序,组成一段对话。(5分)

- () I see. How can I get to the library?
() Hey, Robin. Where is the post office?
() OK. Let's go.
() Turn left at the school. Then go straight.
() It's next to the library.

十三、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在横线上。(有一项多余)(5分)

- A. You're welcome. B. I'm new here.
C. It's near the library. D. Thank you.
E. Excuse me. F. Go straight.

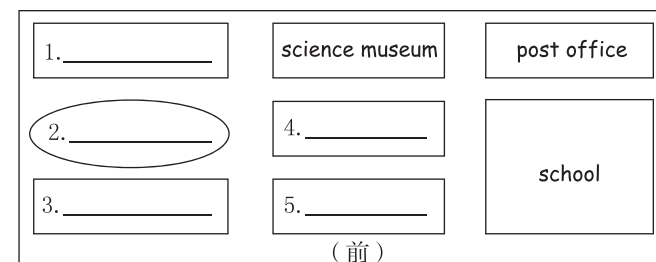
Amy: Excuse me. Where is the post office?
Mike: I'm sorry. 1. _____ You can ask the policeman.
Amy: Thank you all the same.
...
Amy: 2. _____ Can you help me?

Policeman: Sure.
Amy: How can I get to the post office?
Policeman: 3. _____ You can see the KFC.
Amy: And then?
Policeman: It's next to it.
Amy: Oh, I see. 4. _____
Policeman: 5. _____

十四、任务型阅读。按要求完成下列各题。(10分)

First, you can see the science museum. It's between the bookstore and the post office. The bookstore is behind the cinema. The hospital is in front of the cinema. The library is in front of the science museum. There is a park next to the hospital. The school is next to the park and the library. It's in front of the post office. Let's finish the map. Let's go!

任务一: 阅读短文,完成地图。(5分)

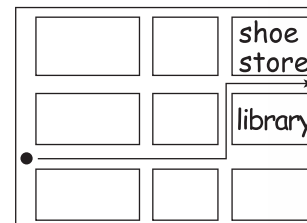


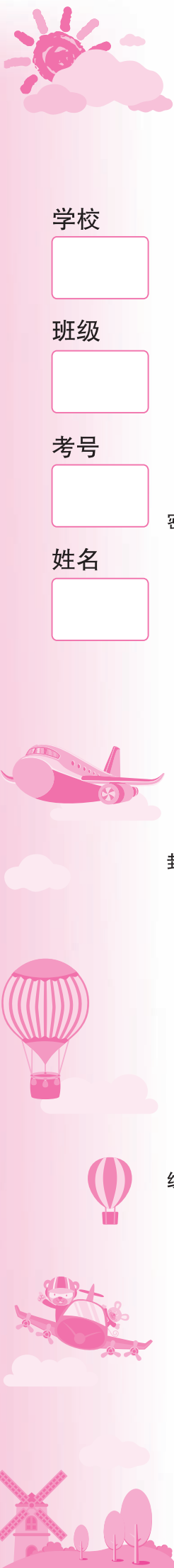
任务二: 根据短文内容,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。(5分)

- () 6. The bookstore is next to the post office.
() 7. The bookstore is behind the cinema.
() 8. The cinema is behind the hospital.
() 9. The park is next to the hospital.
() 10. The school is behind the science museum.

十五、Mary 在找去一家鞋店的路,你能帮帮她吗?(5分)

A: Excuse me, _____?
B: _____
A: Thank you.
B: _____





学校

班级

考号

姓名

密

封

线

Unit 2 达标卷

建议时间: 40 分钟 满分: 100 分

Listening Part(40 分)

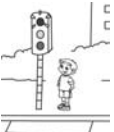



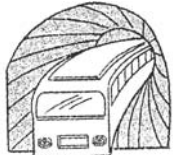


听力音频

一、听录音,选择你所听到的句子中含有的短语,将其序号填入题前括号里。(5 分)

- () 1. A. by sled B. by subway C. by ship
() 2. A. in the UK B. in the USA C. in the UN
() 3. A. look left B. turn right C. cross the road
() 4. A. by bus B. by ferry C. by boat
() 5. A. traffic lights B. traffic signs
C. traffic rules

二、听录音,判断下列图片与你所听到的内容是否相符,相符的打“√”,不相符的打“×”。(10 分)






1.  ()
2.  ()
3.  ()
4.  ()
5.  ()

三、听录音,用数字给下列句子排序,将其组成一段完整的短文。(5 分)

- () Slow down and stop at a yellow light.
() We must pay attention to the traffic lights.
() Stop and wait at a red light.
() When you go across the road, please look at the traffic lights first.
() Go at a green light.

四、听录音,帮下面人物选择相应的交通方式,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10 分)

- A. by bus B. on foot C. by taxi
D. by subway E. by sled

- () 1.  () 2.  () 3. 
() 4.  () 5. 

五、听录音,根据短文内容选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10 分)

- () 1. Where is Lucy from?
A. She is from China. B. She is from the USA.
C. She is from the UK.
() 2. Are Lily and Lucy from the same country?
A. Yes, they are. B. No, they don't.
C. No, they aren't.
() 3. Is Lucy's home next to their school?
A. Yes, it is. B. We don't know.
C. No, it isn't.
() 4. How does Lucy go to school?
A. She goes to school by bus.
B. She goes to school by subway.
C. She goes to school on foot.
() 5. Lily's home is _____ their school. She goes to school _____.
A. near; by bike B. far from; by bus
C. next to; on foot






Writing Part(60 分)

六、选择每组中不同类的单词,将其序号填入题前括号里。(5 分)

- () 1. A. sled B. ferry C. helmet
() 2. A. fast B. taxi C. slow
() 3. A. train B. plane C. by

- () 4. A. subway B. stop C. wait
() 5. A. early B. late C. must

七、根据图片写出相应的短语完成句子。(10 分)

1. I go to the zoo _____. 
2. He goes to school _____. 
3. Mike goes to China _____. 
4. We go to school _____. 
5. She goes to Shanghai _____. 

八、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10 分)

- () 1. In Alaska, USA, it _____ a lot.
A. snow B. snows C. snowing
() 2. Let's _____ to the park.
A. goes B. going C. go
() 3. There are always _____ traffic lights in every country.
A. three B. four C. five
() 4. Grandpa, let me read this _____ you.
A. for B. at C. of
() 5. If you go by sled, don't let the dogs run too _____.
A. slow B. fast C. snowy
() 6. It's near here. You can go _____.
A. by plane B. on foot C. by train

- () 7. —How can I get to the zoo?
—_____.
- A. I can go by bus
B. We can go by bus
C. You can go by bus
- () 8. I don't go to school. I learn _____ home.
A. on B. of C. at
- () 9. In the USA, people _____ bikes must wear helmets.
A. on B. go C. at
- () 10. —Don't run on the ferry. —_____.
A. OK B. Let me try
C. You're welcome

九、读一读,判断下列句子正误,正确的打“√”,错误的打“×”。
(3分)

1. Mike comes to the museum.
() A. He is at the museum.
() B. He is not at the museum.
2. How can I go to the cinema?
() A. I am at the cinema.
() B. I am not at the cinema.
3. The traffic light is yellow.
() A. The woman will go.
() B. The woman will slow down and stop.

十、给下列句子选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。
(6分)



- () 1. The double-decker looks like two buses put together. It can take more people around the city.
- () 2. The Airbus A380 is very big. It can carry 555 people. It can move at the speed of 1090km an hour.
- () 3. The high speed train travels very fast. It can move at the speed of 300km an hour.

十一、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在横线上。(有一项多余)(5分)

- A. Take the No. 19 bus over there.
B. Thanks.
C. How about you?
D. Hi, Tom!
E. But you must pay attention to the traffic lights.
F. Excuse me.

Tom: Hello, Ann.

Ann: 1. _____ How do you go to school?

Tom: I usually go by bike. 2. _____

Ann: I often go to school on foot.

Tom: I want to see a film. How can I get to the cinema?






Ann: 3. _____ Look! The bus is coming!

Tom: I see. Bye, Ann.

Ann: Bye-bye. 4. _____

Tom: Oh, right! 5. _____

十二、根据情景给出合适的建议。(5分)

<p>1. On a ferry</p>  <p>Don't _____ _____.</p>	<p>2. On a bike</p>  <p>We must _____ _____.</p>	<p>3. On a subway</p>  <p>Don't _____ _____.</p>
<p>4. On a sled</p>  <p>Don't _____ _____.</p>	<p>5. On foot</p>  <p>You must _____ _____.</p>	






十三、阅读短文,选择正确答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。
(10分)

There is a picture about the “Green Transportation Pyramid” on the wall. Lily and her friends want to make a GREEN weekend plan. Lily is going to the zoo this Saturday. She usually goes there by taxi, but she is going to take a subway this time. She is going to take Line 3 for fifteen minutes, and then take Line 2

for eighteen minutes. After that, she is going to walk to the zoo for five minutes. Cindy is going to the museum. Her parents often take her to the museum by car. This time she plans to share a car with her friends. Mike is going to row a boat in the park. He usually goes there by bus, but he's going there by bike this weekend. Peter is going to the music club. He says he's going to walk there. It will take him about twenty minutes. Do you want to make a GREEN weekend plan like them?

- () 1. How long is it going to take Lily to get to the zoo?
A. About fifteen minutes.
B. About thirty-three minutes.
C. About thirty-eight minutes.
- () 2. Cindy often goes to the museum _____.
A. by bike B. by car C. by taxi
- () 3. Mike is going to _____.
A. see animals B. visit the robots
C. row a boat
- () 4. Peter is going to the club _____.
A. on foot B. by subway C. by bus
- () 5. “GREEN” in this passage means “_____”.
A. to colour the transportation green
B. to do something good for the environment (环境)
C. to make the leaves on the trees green

十四、书面表达。根据表格内容,介绍下面几位同学的上学方式。(6分)

Amy	Jack	Sarah	Tom	Sam
				

Amy, Jack, Sarah, Tom and Sam are good friends. They often play together. But they go to school in different ways. _____

听力材料及参考答案

Unit 1 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. It's a compass.
2. They can eat some pizza in an Italian restaurant.
3. You can read books in the library.
4. Go straight and you can see the Palace Museum.
5. The museum shop is next to the bookstore.
- 二、1. You should turn right.
2. We need a compass.
3. You can buy some books at the bookstore.
4. There is a new cinema in our city.
5. You can see a big post office over there.
- 三、1. Excuse me. Is there a hospital near here?
2. Where is the library?
3. Excuse me. Can you help me?
4. How can I get to the Italian restaurant?
5. Robin has GPS. What is his new feature?
- 四、Amy: Excuse me, sir. Where is the post office? I want to send a letter.
Policeman: It's next to the bookstore.
Amy: Is it far from here?
Policeman: Yes. You can take the No. 1 bus. Get off at the cinema. Turn right at the first crossing. Go straight and turn left at the bookstore. Then you can see the post office.
Amy: Thank you, sir.
- 五、What do you want to do on Saturday and Sunday? Please come to the science museum. In the museum, you can see many interesting things. You can see beautiful stars. You can talk with the robot. You can have fun with your friends. How do you get to the museum? Well, it is on Third Street. It's next to the Happy Restaurant. It's near the Children's Hospital. It's behind the Wanda Cinema. It opens from 8: 00 to 18: 00. Welcome to the museum.

参考答案

- 一、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B
二、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. B
三、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B
四、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. A
五、1. want 2. science museum 3. interesting 4. beautiful
5. robot 6. have fun 7. get to 8. next to 9. near
10. behind
六、1. bookstore cinema post office
2. near beside behind
七、1. hospital 2. crossing 3. turn left 4. go straight
5. turn right
八、1. near 2. on 3. library 4. police station
九、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A
6. B 7. C 8. C 9. B 10. A
十、1. B; post office 2. E; cinema 3. C; Turn right
4. D; GPS 5. A; 188 bus
十一、1. E 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B
十二、3 1 5 4 2
十三、1. B 2. E 3. F 4. D 5. A
十四、任务一: 1. bookstore 2. cinema 3. hospital
4. library 5. park
任务二: 6. F 7. T 8. T 9. T 10. F
十五、A: Excuse me, how can I get to the shoe store?
B: Go straight, turn left at the second crossing, then

go straight, and turn right at the library. You can see the shoe store on your left.

A: Thank you.

B: You're welcome.

Unit 2 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. If you go to work by sled, you must drive slowly.
2. They are from my cousin in the USA.
3. You must look right before you cross the road.
4. Some children in Jiangxi, China, go to school by ferry every day.
5. I must pay attention to the traffic lights.
- 二、1. It's red. He must stop and wait.
2. I usually go to the park on foot.
3. I often go to Sanya by ship.
4. They go home by ferry.
5. Sometimes he goes to school by subway.
- 三、When you go across the road, please look at the traffic lights first. Stop and wait at a red light. Slow down and stop at a yellow light. Go at a green light. We must pay attention to the traffic lights.
- 四、1. Hello, I'm Chen Jie. I often come to school by subway.
2. Hello, I'm Robin. I often go to the park on foot.
3. Hello, I'm Mike. Sometimes I go to the science museum by bus.
4. Hello, I'm John. I sometimes go to the gym by taxi.
5. Hello, I'm Oliver. I sometimes go to school by sled.
- 五、Lucy and Lily are good friends. Lucy is from the USA. Lily is from the UK. Lucy's home is next to their school, so she goes to school on foot. But Lily's home is far from their school. She goes to school by bus. They often study and play together at school.

参考答案

- 一、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A
二、1. √ 2. × 3. √ 4. × 5. √
三、3 5 2 1 4
四、1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. E
五、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. B
六、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C
七、1. by bus 2. by subway 3. by plane 4. on foot
5. by train
八、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. B
6. B 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. A
九、1. A. √ B. × 2. A. × B. √ 3. A. × B. √
十、1. B 2. C 3. A
十一、1. D 2. C 3. A 4. E 5. B
十二、1. run on the ferry 2. put on a helmet
3. touch the door 4. let the dogs run too fast
5. stop at a red light (答案不唯一)
十三、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B
十四、Amy, Jack, Sarah, Tom and Sam are good friends. They often play together. But they go to school in different ways. Amy usually goes to school on foot. Jack goes to school in his father's car. Sarah often goes to school by subway. Tom goes to school by bus. Sam goes to school by bike.

Unit 3 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. He is going to buy his favourite comic book.
2. She is going to see a film in the cinema.
3. I'm going to take a trip with my parents next weekend.
4. I have a nice dictionary.

5. I'm going to buy a postcard for my teacher.

- 二、1. I'm going to look for some beautiful leaves.
2. John is going to buy his favourite comic book.
3. We are going to draw some pictures in Renmin Park.
4. My family are going to get together and have a big dinner.

5. Amy and I are going to read a poem.

- 三、Tomorrow is Saturday. Mike is going to the bookstore. He's going to buy a comic book. He is going to the bookstore by bike. Sarah is going to see a film. It's about a cat. She wants to go to the cinema with her friends.

四、Tom: My friend Jack is going to visit me next week.

Sally: That's nice. Where are you going?

Tom: We're going to the zoo. We're going to see some animals.

Sally: Cool! I have lots of comic books about animals. When are you going?

Tom: Next Saturday.

Sally: Why not go on Sunday? I'm free next Sunday. We can go together.

Tom: Good idea! Let's go together next Sunday!

- 五、My name is Oliver. Tomorrow is Sunday. I have no classes, and my parents aren't going to work. But we are going to be very busy tomorrow. Tomorrow morning, my mother is going to buy something for the next week. My father is going to visit my aunt and uncle. I'm going to play basketball with my cousin. Tomorrow afternoon, we are going to see animals in the zoo. Then we are going to have a big dinner in a restaurant. I think we are going to have a nice Sunday.

参考答案

- 一、4 5 2 1 3
二、1. √ 2. × 3. √ 4. √ 5. ×
三、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B
四、1. week 2. zoo 3. see 4. Saturday 5. together
五、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C
六、1. moon 2. wash 3. comic book 4. tomorrow
5. evening (答案不唯一)
七、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C
6. B 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C
八、1. D 2. C 3. A 4. E 5. B 6. F
九、1. word book 2. cinema 3. Saturday 4. postcard
5. dictionary
十、1. Where are you going? 2. What are you going to buy?
3. When are you going? 4. How are you going?
5. Who are you going with?
十一、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
十二、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B
十三、Hello, I'm Oliver. The weekend is coming. I'm going to do my homework this evening. I'm going to read books on Saturday morning. I'm going to see a film on Saturday afternoon. I'm going to write an email on Saturday evening. I'm going to visit my grandparents on Sunday.

Recycle 1 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. They are going to Beijing by plane.
2. Please go straight.
3. My father is going to buy a helmet.
4. We are going to the science museum next weekend.
5. She is going to buy a dictionary.
- 二、1. Let's go to the zoo by taxi.

2. I'm going to the supermarket tomorrow evening.
3. How can I get to the bookstore?
4. I'm going to take a trip on foot.
5. He is going to watch TV tonight.

三、W: Excuse me. Where is the science museum?

M: It's next to the bookstore.

W: How can I get there?

M: Turn left at the hospital. Then turn right at the post office. Go straight. Turn right at the traffic lights. You will see a school on your left. The bookstore is behind the school. Then you can find the science museum.

W: OK, I see. Thank you.

M: You're welcome.

- 四、It's Saturday tomorrow. Linda is going to have a busy day. In the morning, she is going to the supermarket with her mother. The supermarket is near her home, so they will get there on foot. The Mid-Autumn Festival is coming. They will buy some mooncakes for the Mid-Autumn Festival. Linda likes mooncakes very much. Then in the afternoon, she will do homework at home. In the evening, she is going to the cinema by bus. She is going to see a film with her friends. She will be happy.

五、On Saturday morning, John meets Amy at Renmin Park.

M: Hi, Amy. Where are you going?

W: Hi, John. I'm going to the bookstore.

M: What are you going to buy?

W: I'm going to buy a dictionary and some postcards.

M: Can I go with you? I'm going to buy some comic books.

W: Sure.

M: How can we get there?

W: It's a little far. Let's go by bus first. Then we get off the bus at the cinema, and we can go to the bookstore on foot. The bookstore is near the cinema.

M: OK.

参考答案

- 一、1. C 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B
二、1. taxi 2. supermarket 3. get to 4. trip 5. tonight
三、1. D 2. E 3. B 4. C 5. A
四、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. C
五、打“√”的图片: 1 3 4 7 10
六、1. cinema 2. often 3. see a film 4. by plane
5. mooncakes (答案不唯一)
七、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C
6. B 7. B 8. B 9. C 10. C
八、1. √ 2. × 3. × 4. × 5. √
九、1. turn right 2. by plane 3. turn left
4. see a film 5. comic book
十、1. B 2. A 3. E 4. C 5. D
十一、1. I'm going to visit my grandparents.
2. What are you going to do this weekend?
3. I go to Sanya by ship.
4. Is there a cinema near here?
5. He is going there at two o'clock.
十二、1. bookstore 2. with 3. don't 4. street 5. red
6. cross 7. green 8. white
十三、1. C 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. C
十四、My family's weekend plan
Hi, I'm Tom. This is my family's weekend plan. My father is going to read a book. My mother and I are going to see a film. My brother is going to watch TV. My sister is going to take a dance class. We are going to have a good time.



同步作业类

冲刺名校必备

黄冈小状元



练重点

拓展·培优



主 编 万志勇

六年级英语上 RP



龍門書局

龙门品牌·学子至爱
www.longmenshujia.com

目 录

Unit 1 How can I get there?1

Part A	Let's try	Let's talk	.....	1
Part A	Let's learn	Make a map and talk	....	2
Part B	Let's try	Let's talk	.....	3
Part B	Let's learn	Be a tour guide	.....	4
Part B	Read and write-Let's wrap it up	...		5
Unit 1	单元提升		.....	7

Unit 2 Ways to go to school..... 10

Part A	Let's try	Let's talk	.....	10
Part A	Let's learn	Write and say	.....	11
Part B	Let's try	Let's talk	.....	12
Part B	Let's learn	Role-play	.....	13
Part B	Read and write-Let's wrap it up	...		14
Unit 2	单元提升		.....	16

Unit 3 My weekend plan 19

Part A	Let's try	Let's talk	.....	19
Part A	Let's learn	Make a plan	.....	20
Part B	Let's try	Let's talk	.....	21
Part B	Let's learn	Role-play	.....	22
Part B	Read and write-Let's wrap it up	...		23
Unit 3	单元提升		.....	25

拓展提升训练（一） 28

Unit 4 I have a pen pal..... 31

Part A	Let's try	Let's talk	.....	31
Part A	Let's learn	Do a survey	.....	32
Part B	Let's try	Let's talk	.....	33
Part B	Let's learn	Listen, match and say	...34	
Part B	Read and write-Let's wrap it up	...		35
Unit 4	单元提升		.....	37

Unit 5 What does he do? 40

Part A Let's try Let's talk 40

Part A Let's learn Listen, match and say ... 41

Part B Let's try Let's talk 42

Part B Let's learn Write and discuss 43

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up ... 44

Unit 5 单元提升 46

Unit 6 How do you feel? 49

Part A Let's try Let's talk 49

Part A Let's learn Write and say 50

Part B Let's try Let's talk 51

Part B Let's learn Play card games 52

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up ... 53

Unit 6 单元提升 55

拓展提升训练（二） 58

阅读素养训练 61

Topic 1 Health 61

Topic 2 Protect the environment 65

Topic 3 Jobs 68

Topic 4 Travel 71

Topic 5 Science and technology 74

参考答案及听力材料..... 77

附：素养抽测卷（共6套）



Unit 1 How can I get there?

Part A Let's try Let's talk



基础重点练

一、选词填空，将其序号填在横线上。

- A. cinema B. near C. behind
D. send E. talk

- I want to _____ an email to my pen pal.
- This afternoon, my mum will go to the _____ and see a film.
- Don't _____ now! Pay attention to me!
- My school is _____ my home. I can walk to school.
- I am _____ you! Please turn back, and you can see me.

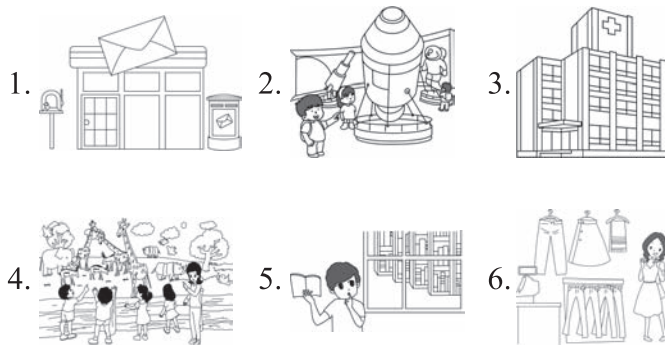
二、单项选择。

- _____ is the post office?
—It's next to the school.
A. What B. Where C. How
- What _____ beautiful flowers!
A. a B. / C. an
- Excuse me, where is the library?
—It's _____ the cinema.
A. next B. next to C. at
- Excuse me, _____ there a bookstore?
A. are B. am C. is
- I want _____ buy a postcard.
A. to B. and C. /
- I always buy some storybooks in the _____.
A. library B. cinema C. bookstore



能力重点练

三、看图，补全句子。(每空一词)



- I can send a postcard in the _____.
- Amy is interested in science. She loves to visit the _____.
- Sarah had a headache. Her parents took her to _____.
- At the _____, we can see lots of animals.
- Shh! Let's read quietly in the _____.
- Lily bought a dress in the _____.

四、选择合适的句子补全对话。(有一项多余)

- A. It's useful. B. Where is it?
C. Thank you. D. Excuse me,
E. Yes, of course. F. It's near the school.

Yifan: 1. _____ is there a cinema in the city?

Sarah: 2. _____

Yifan: 3. _____

Sarah: It's next to the supermarket. Are you new here?

Yifan: Yes!

Sarah: You can buy a map of the city. 4. _____

Yifan: Great. Where can I get a map?

Sarah: Over there! In the little shop.

Yifan: 5. _____

Sarah: You're welcome!



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

Part A Let's learn Make a map and talk



基础重点练

一、按要求完成下列各题。

1. Where are you going? (将答语补充完整)

I am going to read a book in the _____.

2. Where is the museum? (将答语补充完整)

It's _____ the cinema.

3. How beautiful the dress is! (改为同义句)

What _____ !

4. Is there a cinema? (作肯定回答)

二、读对话，判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

Oliver: Hi, Mike. I want to go to the science museum. Do you know where it is?

Mike: Yes. It's next to the bookstore.

Oliver: Thank you. Where are you going?

Mike: I am going to the bookstore. You can follow me.

Oliver: Wonderful! Let's go.

Mike: OK!

() 1. Oliver wants to go to the bookstore.

() 2. The science museum is near the school.

() 3. Mike wants to see a film.

() 4. They can go together.

三、读句子，写出他们各自工作的场所，并选择相应的图片。

() 1. My dad is a zookeeper. A. He works in the _____.



() 2. My mum is a doctor. B. She works in the _____.



() 3. My uncle is a coach. C. He works in the _____.



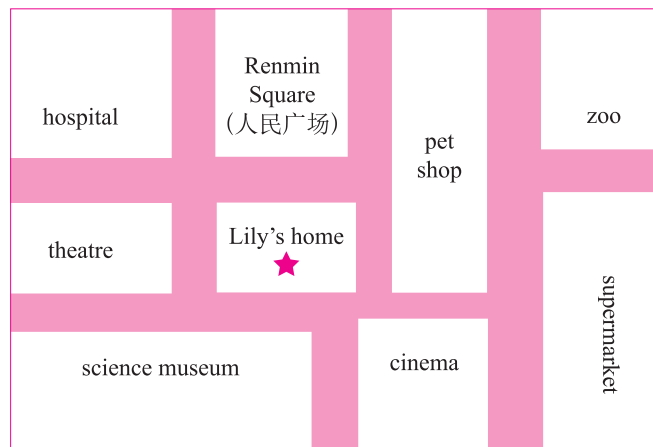
() 4. My grandma is a bookseller. D. She works in the _____.



能力重点练

四、读地图，回答问题。

(前)



1. Where is the pet shop?

2. Is there a bookstore on the map?

3. Is the cinema near the science museum?

4. Where is the hospital?

5. Which place is between the hospital and the pet shop?

五、演讲与写作。

介绍第四题中的地图展示的城市，或者以“My Dream City”为题讲述你心中的理想城市，并写下来。



你真棒



有进步



加油哟



Part B Let's try Let's talk



基础重点练

一、读一读，写出下列单词的反义词或对应词。

1. right—
2. big—
3. long—
4. old—
5. tall—
6. hungry—
7. fast—
8. fat—
9. beautiful—
10. happy—
11. rich—
12. soft—

二、选择正确的答案。

- () 1. —How can I _____ there?
—Go straight on. It's on your left.
A. get B. get to C. gets
- () 2. (多选题) —How can I get to the zoo?
—_____.
A. By bus B. On foot C. By bike

三、给下列图片选择相应的句子。

- A. Go straight, and then turn right.
- B. There is a post office near here.
- C. Turn left, please.
- D. What a great museum!
- E. —Where is the cinema? —It's next to the hospital.



()



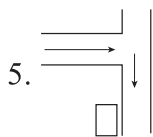
()



()



()



()



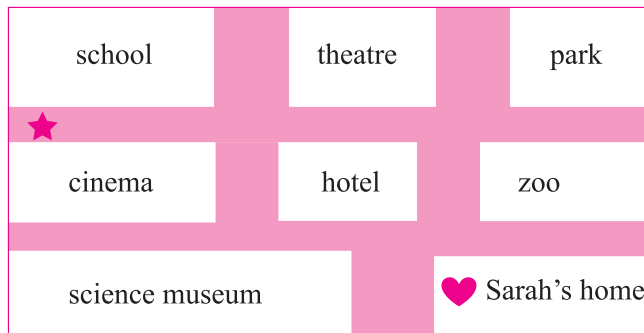
能力重点练

四、读留言条，画出路线图。

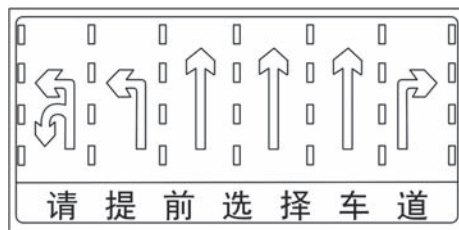
Dear Amy,

Welcome to my home. You can start from our school. Go straight. Turn right at the cinema, and then turn left. Then go straight and turn right at the science museum. My home is on your left.

Love,
Sarah



五、看图，补全短文。



① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥

Mike's family are going to an Italian restaurant by car. Now they are at a 1. c_____. There are 2. s_____ lanes on the street. If they go 3. s_____, they can choose the third, the fourth or the fifth lane. If they turn right, they can choose the 4. s_____ lane. If they 5. t_____, they can choose the 6. f_____ or the 7. s_____ lane. The Italian restaurant is behind them. So they must choose the 8. f_____ lane and 9. t_____ back.



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

Part B Let's learn Be a tour guide

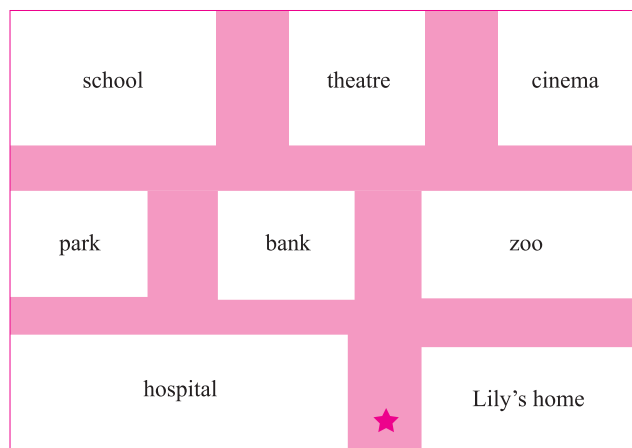


基础重点练

一、情景选择。(多选题)

- () 1. 你不知道去银行的路, 你可以这样问:
A. Where is the bank?
B. How can I get to the bank?
C. Could you tell me the way to the bank?
- () 2. 从 Lily 家到学校, 路线正确的有:

(前)



- A. Go straight and turn left at the bank. Then go straight. You can see the school across from the park.
- B. Go straight and turn left at the hospital. Then turn right at the bank, and then turn left at the park. You can see the school on your right.
- C. Go straight and turn right at the theatre. You can see the school on your right.

二、完形填空。

After 1 an interesting film, Tom and Lily feel 2. They want to eat Italian food. But 3 is the Italian restaurant? They look 4 it online. Oh! It is on

Dongfang Street. GPS 5 them to find the way! First, turn left 6 the bookstore. Then turn right at the science museum. They 7 the Italian restaurant on their left.

- () 1. A. watching B. see C. watch
() 2. A. happy B. hungry C. good
() 3. A. when B. where C. what
() 4. A. for B. into C. at
() 5. A. help B. helps C. helping
() 6. A. in B. at C. on
() 7. A. find B. look for C. look



能力重点练

三、任务型阅读。

Mike: Excuse me, is there a library near here?

Robin: Yes, there is.

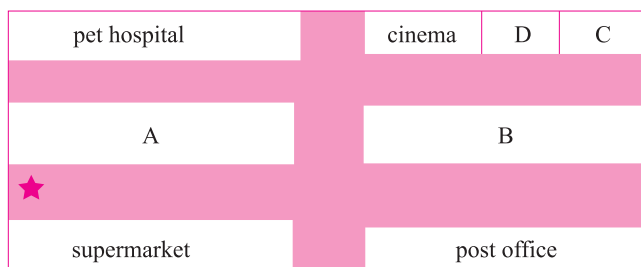
Mike: Where is it?

Robin: It's between the science museum and the cinema.

Mike: How can I get to the library?

Robin: Go straight. Turn left at the zoo. Go straight and turn right at the hospital. Then go straight. You will see it on your left.

Mike: Thanks.



Task 1: 画出 Robin 描述的线路。

Task 2: 写出图中 A、B、C、D 四个地点的名称。

- A. _____ B. _____
C. _____ D. _____



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

Part B Read and write- Let's wrap it up



基础重点练

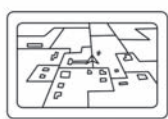
一、写出下列缩写词的中文意思，并选择其中两个，写出它们的完全形式。

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. GPS _____ | 2. HB _____ |
| 3. DIY _____ | 4. USA _____ |
| 5. UK _____ | 6. PRC _____ |
| 7. UN _____ | 8. UFO _____ |

二、读谜语，写单词，并选择相应的图片。



A



B



C

- () 1. It's a small thing. It can tell you directions. It's a _____.
- () 2. It can lead you anywhere. It can be in your phone or on your car. It's _____.
- () 3. It shows roads, buildings and nature on paper. It's a _____.

三、将下列句子排成一段通顺的对话。

- A. Where is the bookstore?
- B. Thank you.
- C. Excuse me, where is the science museum?
- D. It is next to the bookstore on Dongfang Street.
- E. Turn right at the zoo. Then turn left at the park.

_____ → _____ → _____ → _____ → _____

四、读对话，回答问题。

Mike: Excuse me, where is the museum?

Policeman: It's next to the supermarket.

Mike: I don't know where the supermarket is.

How can I get there?

Policeman: It's not far from here. You can go there on foot. Go straight for fifteen minutes and you can see a tall red building. It's the supermarket. And then turn left. You can see the museum.

Mike: Thank you.

Policeman: You're welcome.

1. Where does Mike want to go?

2. Is there a supermarket not far from here?

3. How many minutes can Mike walk to the supermarket?

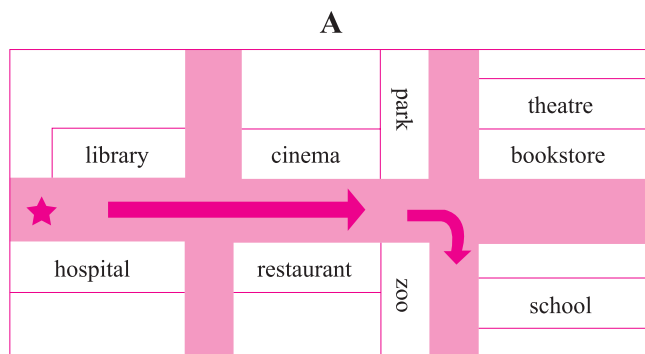
4. What is the tall red building?

5. What do you think of the policeman?



能力重点练

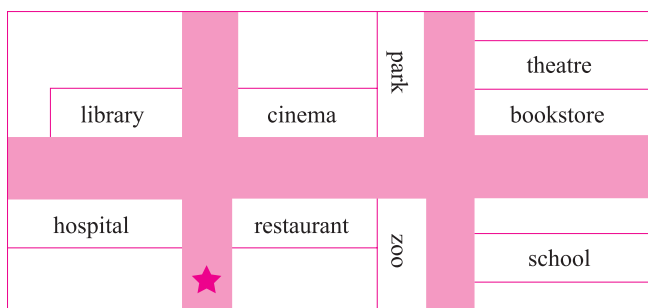
五、看图，补全对话。(每空一词)



—Excuse me, how can I get to the school?

—_____ and then _____ at the second crossing. You can see the school on your _____.

B



—How can I get to the theatre?

—Go straight and _____ at the restaurant. Then _____ at the _____. You can see it on your _____.

(请在图上画出路线图)

六、任务型阅读。

(一)

(During the summer camp in Qingdao, Mike and Yifan are lost.)

Mike: Oh, my God. We are lost.

Yifan: Don't worry. We have a map. We can find the way.

Mike: Sorry, I left the map at home.

Yifan: Er... We have a phone. It has GPS.

Mike: Oh, no. It is powered off.

Yifan: Let's take out the compass. It can show us directions.

Mike: It doesn't work. It is broken.

Yifan: Look at the tree. It can show us directions, too.

Mike: Wow! Great!

Task 1: 文中提到的能帮助辨别方向的东西有:

Task 2: The phone has GPS. (照样子写句子)

_____ has GPS.

_____ have GPS.

Task 3: 选词填空: south north

The trees in Qingdao can show directions.

The side of the tree that has more leaves

is _____. The side of the tree that has fewer leaves is _____.

(二)

China is an ancient country with a long history. There are four great inventions (发明) in ancient China. They are papermaking, the compass, gunpowder and printing.

The compass was invented by ancient Chinese people during the time of the Warring States period (战国时期). It helped people to know directions (方向). Papermaking was improved by Cai Lun in the Han dynasty (朝代). Moveable type of printing was invented by Bi Sheng in the Song dynasty. Gunpowder was invented in the Tang dynasty.

Task 1: 根据短文内容填空。

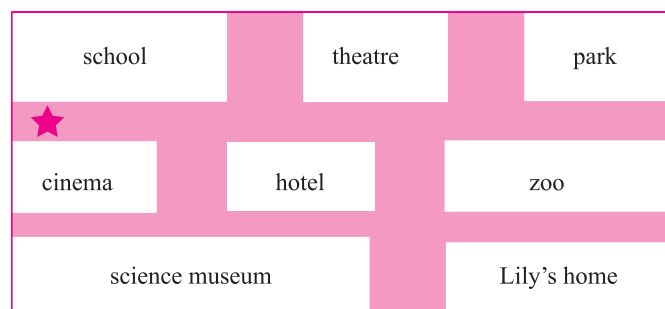
The passage is about _____.

Task 2: 按照时间顺序, 将中国古代四大发明排序:

_____ → _____ → _____ → _____

七、演讲与写作。

Lucy 想从学校去 Lily 家做客, 但是不知道具体路线。假如你是 Lily, 请你在地图上标注路线, 并写一篇小短文介绍具体的路线。



Hello, Lucy. You can start from our school.



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

Unit 1 单元提升



Listening



听力音频

一、听录音，选出你所听到的句子或对话中含有的内容。

- () 1. A. left B. straight C. right
 () 2. A. music B. museum C. cinema
 () 3. A. library B. bookstore C. hospital
 () 4. A. far B. follow C. feature
 () 5. A. near B. next to C. beside

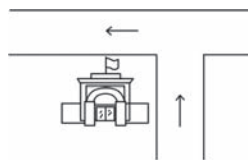
二、听录音，选择与所听内容相符的图片。



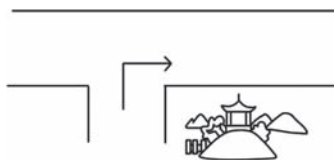
A.



B.



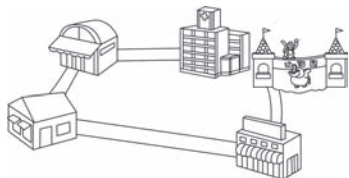
C.



D.



E.



F.

1. _____ 2. _____
 3. _____ 4. _____
 5. _____ 6. _____

三、听录音，选择正确的答语。

- () 1. A. It is next to the cinema.
 B. Yes. It's here.
 C. It is not far.

- () 2. A. No, there aren't.
 B. Sorry, I don't know!
 C. Yes, it is.
 () 3. A. It is too far.
 B. It's easy.
 C. Go straight and then turn right. You can see it.
 () 4. A. Yes, I am.
 B. Thank you!
 C. Yes, you are.
 () 5. A. Over there.
 B. Let's go.
 C. No, it isn't.

四、听对话，判断下列句子正(√)误(×)。

- () 1. Mike's pet is a cat.
 () 2. Mike is ill.
 () 3. Wu Yifan doesn't know where the pet hospital is.
 () 4. The pet hospital is next to a bookstore.
 () 5. The pet hospital is not far.

五、听短文，填空。

I live in a small town. My school is not 1. _____ my home. My school is 2. _____ a science 3. _____. In front of my school, there is a 4. _____. We can buy books there. On the weekend, my friends and I can 5. _____ in a 6. _____. It is 7. _____ my home. A 8. _____ is behind the cinema. And there is a big 9. _____. It's opposite the cinema. We live a 10. _____ life here.



Reading and Writing

六、判断下列句子的语调是否正确，正确的打“√”，错误的打“×”。

() 1. Where is the hospital?

() 2. Is it a bookstore?

() 3. Follow me, please.

() 4. Robin has GPS.

七、选出每组中不同类的一项。

() 1. A. turn B. bookstore C. theatre

() 2. A. beside B. museum C. cinema

() 3. A. library B. right C. left

() 4. A. send B. follow C. far

() 5. A. behind B. next to C. zoo

八、单项选择。

() 1. —_____ is the Italian restaurant?
—It's next to the cinema.

A. How B. Where C. What

() 2. —How can I _____ home?
—Turn left at the zoo.

A. get to B. get C. gets

() 3. —How can I _____ the cinema?
—Turn right at the _____ crossing.

A. get to; one

B. gets; first

C. get to; first

() 4. How beautiful _____!

A. flowers

B. the flowers

C. the flowers are

() 5. —Is there an art museum in the city?

—_____.

A. Yes, there is

B. Yes, there are

C. No, there aren't

九、按要求完成下列各题。

1. What a nice day! (改为以 how 引导的感叹句)

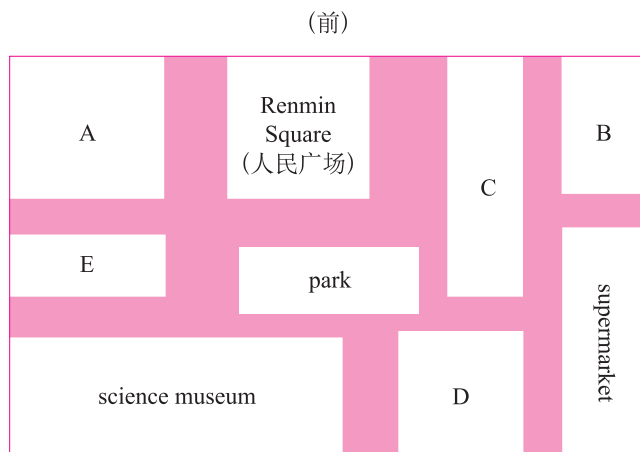
2. How big the elephant is! (改为以 what 引导的感叹句)

3. The supermarket is near the cinema. (对画线部分提问)

4. I to the How can get museum(?)
(连词成句)

5. Where is the post office? (将答语补充完整)
_____ behind the bookstore.

十、读一读，写出图中 A、B、C、D、E 五个地点的名称。



1. The hospital is on the left of Renmin Square.
2. The theatre is behind the hospital.

3. The cinema is on the right of the science museum.

4. The pet shop is in front of the cinema.

5. The zoo is near the supermarket.

A. _____ B. _____ C. _____

D. _____ E. _____

十一、选择合适的句子补全对话。(有一项多余)

John: Excuse me, 1. _____

Policeman: Yes, there is.

John: 2. _____

Policeman: Turn left here and go straight.
Then turn right at the third crossing.

3. _____

John: Is it far?

Policeman: It will take you 20 minutes to walk there.

John: Oh! 4. _____ Can I take a bus?

Policeman: Of course! 5. _____

John: 6. _____

Policeman: You're welcome.

A. I have a heavy bag.

B. You can take the No. 11 bus.

C. is there a hotel near here?

D. Thank you!

E. How can I get there?

F. You can see a hotel on your right.

G. Are there any hotels near here?

十二、阅读短文，回答问题。

Hi, I'm Tom. I am 12 years old. I live in Chongqing for 6 years. I love Chinese food. There are four famous Chinese restaurants in

Chongqing. My favourite one is the CYGNET HOT POT, because I love the hot pot there. How can we get to the CYGNET HOT POT in Hongyadong? It's far. We can take the No. 105 bus and get off at the hotel. Turn left at the hotel. Then go straight for 3 minutes. We can see the restaurant on our left.

1. Why does Tom like the CYGNET HOT POT?

2. Which bus can we take to Tom's favourite restaurant?

3. Is the CYGNET HOT POT far?

十三、书面表达。

陈杰的生日快到了，她要在周日晚上 7:00 举行生日派对。不过她的生日邀请卡还没写好，你能帮帮她吗？

陈杰家的路线提示：

1. 在学校左转，然后直走 3 分钟。

2. 在医院左转再右转，左侧是科学博物馆，陈杰家就在科学博物馆的旁边。

下面是她给 Amy 的邀请卡，开头和结尾已写好，请把正文补充完整。

Dear Amy,

Please come to my birthday party at 7 p. m. on Sunday. Now I'll tell you how to get to my home.

Yours,
Chen Jie



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

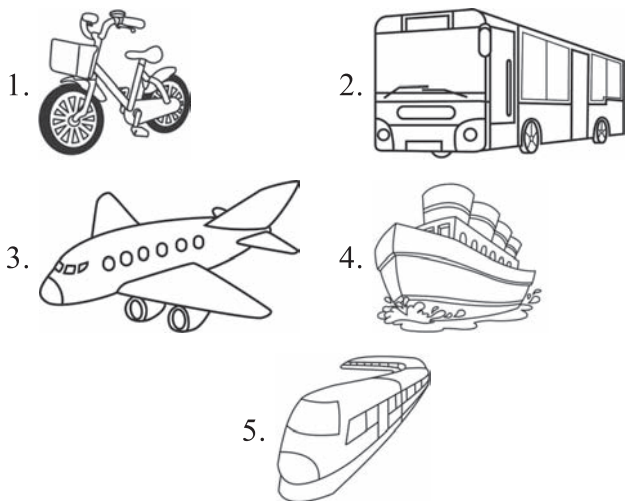
Unit 2 Ways to go to school

Part A Let's try Let's talk



基础重点练

一、看图，补全句子。



1. I usually go to school by _____.
2. Sarah goes to the bookstore by _____.
3. He goes to the UK by _____.
4. We go to Sanya by _____.
5. They go to Xi'an by _____.

二、单项选择。

- () 1. My aunt usually goes to work _____ car.
A. on B. by C. in
- () 2. —_____ do you come to the cinema?
—I often come by bike.
A. How B. What C. Where
- () 3. —How do you come to school?
—I come _____ foot.
A. by B. in C. on
- () 4. I often go to the bookstore by bike,
_____ I walk today.
A. and B. or C. but

- () 5. Look! The bus is _____.

A. coming B. come C. comes



能力重点练

三、按要求完成下列各题。

1. I come to school by bike. (对画线部分提问)

2. I often walk to school. (改为同义句)

3. The boys play football together sometimes.
(对画线部分提问)

4. How do you come to the library?
(根据实际情况回答问题)

四、任务型阅读。

Amy, Sarah and Chen Jie are good friends. Amy usually goes to school by bus. Sometimes she goes to school by car with her mum, about **once a week**. Sarah often goes to school by bike, but sometimes she goes to school on foot. Chen Jie **always** walks to school because her home is near the school.

Task 1: 将下列单词或短语翻译成中文。

1. once a week _____
2. always _____

Task 2: 阅读短文，判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

- () 1. Chen Jie's home is far from the school.
- () 2. Amy goes to school by car about 4 times a month.
- () 3. Chen Jie always walks to school.
- () 4. Sarah often goes to school by bike.
- () 5. Sometimes Sarah walks to school.



你真棒



有进步



加油哟



Part A Let's learn Write and say



基础重点练

一、同义句转换。

- Sarah goes to school **on foot**.
Sarah _____ to school.
- They **take a bus** to go to work.
They go to work _____.
- Mike usually goes to the bookstore **by bike**.
Mike usually _____ **his bike** to the bookstore.
- I often go to the cinema **by bus**.
I often _____ **a bus** to the cinema.
- My father visits the USA **by plane**.
My father _____ to visit the USA.

二、根据表格内容，补全对话。(每空一词)

Who	From	To	How
I	Chongqing	Chengdu	by car
we	Zhoushan	Shanghai	by ship
they	Guangzhou	London	by plane
she	Shanghai	New York	by plane
Amy	Moscow	Beijing	by train

- How do you get to Chengdu _____ Chongqing?
—I get there _____.
- _____ get to Shanghai from _____?
—We get there _____.
- How do _____ get to _____ from Guangzhou?
—They get there _____.
- How _____ to New York from Shanghai?
—She gets there _____.

5. 请仿写一组问答句。



能力重点练

三、演讲与写作。请根据班级实际情况填写表格，并写一份书面的调查报告。

- How many students come to school by bus/by bike/on foot/by car/by subway/by motorbike?

()	()	()
()	()	()

2. Do a report.

Hello, I'm _____. I am so happy to do the report on the ways to come to school in our class.

There are _____ students in our class. _____ students come to school by car. _____

I usually come to school _____ because _____.

That's all. Thank you!



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

Part B Let's try Let's talk



基础重点练

一、写出下列标志的英文含义。



能力重点练

二、任务型阅读。

(Chongqing light rail train broadcasting)

Dear passengers, attention please. The train to Liziba Station is arriving. Please watch out and queue up. When the door opens, watch the steps, and passengers get off first. Do not touch the screen doors.

(Getting on the light rail train.)

Dear passengers, welcome to Line 2.

1. _____ watch out and queue up.

2. _____ touch the screen doors.

Dear passengers, the next station is Niujiatuo Station, and the doors will open on the right. You can transfer to Line 3. Please get ready for your arrival.

Task 1: 阅读短文, 选择正确的答案。

() 1. The passengers are on Line _____.

A. 2 B. 1 C. 3

() 2. At _____, you can transfer to Line 3.

A. Niujiatuo Station

B. Liziba Station

C. Huanghuayuan Station

Task 2: 根据短文内容, 用 Please 或 Don't 在文中空白处填空。

Task 3: 请给车厢内的乘客提一条合理的建议, 并设计图标。





你真棒



有进步



加油哟



Part B Let's learn Role-play



基础重点练

一、根据实际情况，判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

- () 1. You must stop and wait at a red light.
 () 2. Traffic lights are different in different countries.
 () 3. When the light is yellow, you should slow down and stop.
 () 4. When we drive, we can go straight, turn right or turn left at every crossing.
 () 5. Let's go at a green light.

二、看图，补全对话。

Zhang Peng: Hello, Mr Black. Welcome to China!

Mr Black: Thank you. Zhang Peng, how can I

get to the 1. _____?

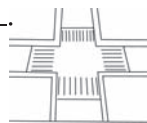


Zhang Peng: 2. _____



at the second 3. _____.

You can see it there.



Mr Black: Thanks. Bye!

Zhang Peng: Watch out! The traffic rules are different between China and the UK. When you cross the street, please

first 4. _____

LOOK LEFT
望左

and then 5. _____.

LOOK RIGHT
望右

Mr Black: Oh! Thanks very much.



能力重点练

三、选出句中错误的一项，并在横线上改正。

- () 1. They often travel by cars. _____
 A B C
 () 2. She go to Beijing by train. _____
 A B C
 () 3. Sometimes I go to school by foot. ____
 A B C

四、根据表格内容，补全对话。

Tom and Lily want to go to the library.		
How	Cheap	Fast
on foot	—	—
by taxi	×	√
by bus	√	×
by subway	√	√

Tom: Lily, let's go to the 1. _____.

Lily: OK! Is it far?

Tom: Yes. So we can't get there 2. _____.

Lily: How can we 3. _____ there?

Tom: We can take a 4. _____.

Lily: It's 5. _____, but it's expensive. We can
 6. _____ the No. 112 bus.

Tom: It is 7. _____, but it is too slow.

Lily: How about taking the 8. _____? It's
 9. _____ and 10. _____.

Tom: Good idea!



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

Part B Read and write- Let's wrap it up

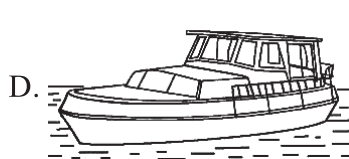
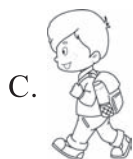
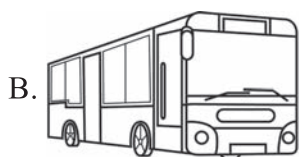


基础重点练

一、选出每组中不同类的一项。

- () 1. A. ferry B. boat C. fast
() 2. A. cinema B. ship C. theatre
() 3. A. slow B. cheap C. run
() 4. A. France B. China C. city
() 5. A. subway B. car C. helmet

二、读句子，选择恰当的交通方式，并将句子补充完整。



- () 1. My school is near my home. Usually, I walk to school, but it is raining today. I go to school _____.
() 2. In winter, it snows a lot in Alaska. I can go to school _____. It's fast.
() 3. Renmin Park is between my school and my home. I love to _____ to school, because I can cross the beautiful park every day.
() 4. I live in Jiangxi, China. Some of us go to school _____.

- () 5. We live in Inner Mongolia (内蒙古).
Some of us go to school _____.

三、根据实际情况，判断下列句子正(√)误(×)。

1. When I cross the street, I look left first.
() I am in Hong Kong.
2. Look! The traffic light is red now.
() Let's go!
3. Wow! It snows a lot. I can't find the way.
() Let's go to school by car.
4. I live in Guangzhou.
() I can go to Macao by ship.
5. I am on the subway.
() It's empty. I can run.
6. I am in the art museum.
() I touch the beautiful pictures.
7. I can see many animals here.
() I am in the zoo.
8. How can I go to the bookstore?
() I am in the bookstore.
9. I can read the sentence like this:
() Come and have a look!
10. I can read the sentence like this:
() Don't touch the door.

四、将下列句子排成一段通顺的对话。

- A. How can I get there?
B. Excuse me, where is the hospital?
C. You can take the No.11 bus and get off at the park. The hospital is opposite the park.
D. It's on Dongfang Street.
E. Thank you.

_____ → _____ → _____ → _____ → _____



能力重点练

五、选择合适的句子补全对话。(有两项多余)

Sarah: Hi, Robin. I want to go to the science museum. 1. _____

Robin: Let me see. It is not far. 2. _____

Sarah: 3. _____

Robin: It is next to the library.

Sarah: 4. _____

Robin: Go straight, and then turn right at the pet shop. 5. _____. You can see it on your left.

Sarah: Thank you, Robin!

A. Then go straight for 3 minutes.

B. Is it far?

C. Is there a science museum?

D. How can I get there?

E. Where is it?

F. I have GPS.

G. You can get there on foot.

六、阅读短文，回答问题。

Hi, I'm Eliza. I am a pupil. I usually go to school on foot because my home is near my school. My mother is a teacher in my school. We can walk to school together. My father is a doctor. He works in a hospital. It's far from my home. He often drives our car to work.

My grandparents live in another city. We visit them by plane once a month.

On Saturdays, my best friend Elsa and I often go to the library by bike. We both love reading.

1. How does Eliza go to school?

2. Why does Eliza's mother walk to school with Eliza?

3. Why does Eliza's father drive to work?

4. How many times a year does Eliza visit her grandparents?

5. How do Elsa and Eliza go to the library?

七、演讲与写作。

寒假里, Amy 一家打算去三亚度假。他们有 20 天的假期。

1. 下面是 Amy 设计的路线, 请给这条旅行路线选择合理的交通方式(选项可重复)。

① by car ② by ship ③ by plane

④ by bus ⑤ by taxi ⑥ by train

Amy's home $\xrightarrow{(\quad)}$ Guangzhou $\xrightarrow{(\quad)}$

Xuwen $\xrightarrow{(\quad)}$ Haikou $\xrightarrow{(\quad)}$ Sanya

2. 假如你是 Amy, 请介绍一下你计划的交通方式, 并写下来。

Hello, I am Amy. This winter holiday, my family will go to Sanya on vacation. How can we get there? Listen to me.

We can _____



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

Unit 2 单元提升



听力音频

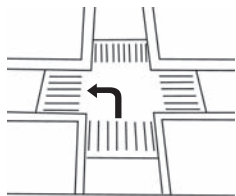


Listening

一、听录音，用数字 1~6 给下列图片排序。



()



()



()



()



()



()

二、听录音，选择正确的答语。

- () 1. A. I can read books.
B. It's next to the cinema.
C. It's a good place.
- () 2. A. I go to school on foot.
B. I love my school.
C. The school life is fun.
- () 3. A. Thanks.
B. Sorry, I won't.
C. That's all right.

- () 4. A. Let's turn left.
B. Let's go.
C. Let's stop and wait.
- () 5. A. Please take off the life jacket.
B. Let's jump.
C. Don't run on the ferry.

三、听对话，选择与对话内容相符的选项。

- () 1. A. Lily goes to school by bus.
B. Lily goes to school by bike.
C. Lily walks to school.
- () 2. A. The hospital is next to the park.
B. The hospital is big.
C. The hospital is at the crossing.
- () 3. A. The boy's father goes to work by bus.
B. The boy's father walks to work.
C. The boy's father goes to work by car.
- () 4. A. We can shout in the library.
B. We shouldn't shout in the library.
C. We can talk aloud in the library.
- () 5. A. They are on the ferry.
B. They are on the playground.
C. They are in a car.

四、听短文，判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

- () 1. Mike wants to go to the post office.
- () 2. The post office is near his home.
- () 3. He can take the No. 7 bus.
- () 4. There are no traffic lights on Mike's way to the bus stop.
- () 5. There is a restaurant next to the bus stop.
- () 6. Go straight and turn right at the crossing. The bus stop is on his left.



Reading and Writing

五、照样子写单词。

- | | | | |
|------------|--------|-------|------------|
| 1. duck | cat | pig | <u>cow</u> |
| 2. bus | bike | car | _____ |
| 3. red | yellow | green | _____ |
| 4. ferry | sled | bike | _____ |
| 5. hurried | quick | slow | _____ |

六、单项选择。

- () 1. In Alaska, USA, it snows _____.
A. a lot of
B. a lot
C. lots of
- () 2. —Let me read it _____ you.
—Thanks.
A. for
B. on
C. in
- () 3. —After school, you _____ do your homework first.
—OK!
A. must
B. does
C. aren't
- () 4. —_____ can we get there?
—We can _____.
A. When; take No.7 bus
B. How; take the no.7 bus
C. How; take the No.7 bus
- () 5. —It is red now.
—Please _____ and _____.
A. slow down; stop
B. stop; wait
C. run; run

- () 6. The door will open. _____ touch the door.
A. Please
B. Don't
C. Must

七、填入恰当的单词或短语，补全句子或对话。

1. —_____ do you go to school, Mike?
—My school is near my home. I often go to school _____.
2. —Please _____ and _____ at a yellow light.
—OK!
3. —Excuse me, how can I get there?
—It's far from here, but the bus stop is near here. You can get there _____.
4. There are two cars in my family. My mother goes to work _____. And my father goes to work _____, too.
5. —How can I get to Hong Kong from Shanghai?
—There are many ways. If you are busy, you can get there _____; if you have enough time, you can get there _____ and you can see the beautiful sea.

八、完形填空。

The traffic rules in 1 UK are 2 from those in China. In the UK, people drive on the 3 side. In China, people drive 4 the right side. So when you 5 the road, you 6 look right first in the UK and you must look left first in 7. Some English people can't 8 the doors of buses 9 they stand on the streets in China. That's 10 they look at the wrong side.

- () 1. A. the B. / C. a

- () 2. A. same B. different C. far
- () 3. A. right B. middle C. left
- () 4. A. in B. on C. along
- () 5. A. walk B. cross C. run
- () 6. A. can B. may C. must
- () 7. A. China B. England C. UK
- () 8. A. find B. look C. touch
- () 9. A. where B. what C. when
- () 10. A. because B. why C. so

九、任务型阅读。

John: Hi, Amy. Where do you want to go for the holidays?

Amy: I want to go to Venice.

John: How will you get there?

Amy: By plane. I can take a gondola (威尼斯小划船) to look around the city.

John: Sounds great! I want to go to Sanya by ship.

Amy: Wow! You can see many sea creatures (生物).

John: Yes! How about Mike?

Amy: He wants to go to Beijing by train. He wants to visit the Great Wall and the Summer Palace.

John: Cool! How about Linda?

Amy: Linda is Mike's cousin. She will go with Mike's family.

John: How about her parents?

Amy: They have a lot of work to do, so they won't go.

John: Oh! What a pity!

Task 1: 将下列表格补充完整。

Name	Place	Way
John		
Amy		
Mike		
Linda		

Task 2: 读对话，回答问题。

- 1. What can John do in Sanya?

- 2. How can Amy get here and there in Venice?

- 3. What does Mike want to visit?

- 4. Will Linda's parents go with Linda?

十、演讲与写作。

- 1. 请根据实际情况填写表格。
- S: sometimes U: usually
- O: often A: always

Member	Job	Way
I	student	U: on foot S: by bike
father		
mother		

- 2. 请根据实际情况介绍你一家人和你的朋友日常的交通方式，并写下来。



参考答案及听力材料

Unit 1 How can I get there?

Part A Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. D 2. A 3. E 4. B 5. C
二、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. C
三、1. post office 2. science museum
3. hospital 4. zoo 5. library
6. clothes shop

- 四、1. D 2. E 3. B 4. A 5. C

Part A Let's learn Make a map and talk

- 一、1. library 2. next to 3. a beautiful dress
4. Yes, there is.
二、1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T
三、1. C zoo 2. B hospital 3. D gym
4. A bookstore
四、1. It's in front of the cinema. (答案不唯一)
2. No, there isn't.
3. Yes, it is.
4. It's in front of the theatre. (答案不唯一)
5. Renmin Square is between the hospital and the pet shop.

五、(范文) My Dream City

I have a dream city in my heart. My home is in the centre. The ice cream shop is next to my home. I can eat ice cream every day. The library is next to my home too. I can read books there every afternoon after school. And the Chinese restaurant is in front of my home. I can go there to eat *jiaozi* because I love it very much. There is a park near my home. When I go to school, I can cross the park. That's wonderful. This is my dream city. Do you like it?

Part B Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. left/wrong 2. small 3. short 4. new/young
5. short 6. full 7. slow 8. thin 9. ugly
10. sad 11. poor 12. hard
二、1. A 2. ABC
三、1. E 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. A
四、略
五、1. crossing 2. six 3. straight 4. sixth
5. turn left 6. first 7. second 8. first 9. turn

Part B Let's learn Be a tour guide

- 一、1. ABC 2. AB
二、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A
三、Task 1. 略
Task 2. A. zoo B. hospital C. science museum
D. library

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up

- 一、1. 全球定位系统 2. 硬黑 (指中等硬度的铅笔芯) 3. 自己动手 4. 美国 5. 英国
6. 中国 7. 联合国 8. 不明飞行物
DIY do-it-yourself
HB hard black (答案不唯一)
二、1. C compass 2. B GPS 3. A map
三、C→D→A→E→B
四、1. He wants to go to the museum.
2. Yes, there is. 3. Fifteen minutes.
4. It's the supermarket.
5. He's helpful./He's kind. (答案不唯一)
五、A Go straight; turn right; left
B turn right; turn left; park; right
(路线图略)
六、(一) Task 1: map; GPS; compass; tree
Task 2: The smart watch has GPS.
The cars have GPS.
Task 3: south; north
(二) Task 1: the four great inventions
Task 2: the compass → papermaking → gunpowder → printing
七、(范文) Hello, Lucy. You can start from our school. Go straight and turn right at the cinema. Then turn left at the hotel. Turn right at the first crossing. You can see my home on your left. Welcome! (路线不唯一)

Unit 1 单元提升

[听力材料]

- 一、1. Please turn right at the bookstore.
2. —Where is the science museum?
—It is in front of the school.
3. Be quiet! Don't shout in the library.
4. Follow me.

5. The Italian restaurant is next to the bookstore.

- 二、1. We can see interesting films in the cinema.
2. Go straight and then turn left. You can see the school.
3. You can buy some beautiful postcards in the post office.
4. The hospital is next to the zoo.
5. I want to buy a book in that bookstore.
6. Just turn right. You can see the park.

- 三、1. Where is the Chinese restaurant?
2. Is there a cinema in the city?
3. How can I get to the hospital?
4. What a cute girl you are!
5. Is it far?

四、Mike: Hello, Wu Yifan. Is there a pet hospital in our town?

Wu Yifan: Of course! But what's wrong?

Mike: My dog is ill. Where is it?

Wu Yifan: Go straight and then turn right at the zoo. You can see the pet hospital on your left. It's next to a bookstore.

Mike: Is it far?

Wu Yifan: No, it isn't.

Mike: Thank you.

Wu Yifan: You're welcome.

- 五、I live in a small town. My school is not far from my home. My school is next to a science museum. In front of my school, there is a bookstore. We can buy books there. On the weekend, my friends and I can see films in a cinema. It is near my home. A post office is behind the cinema. And there is a big theatre. It's opposite the cinema. We live a happy life here.

[参考答案]

一、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B

二、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. F 5. E 6. D

三、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. C

四、1. × 2. × 3. × 4. √ 5. √

五、1. far from 2. next to 3. museum
4. bookstore 5. see films 6. cinema 7. near
8. post office 9. theatre 10. happy

六、1. × 2. × 3. √ 4. √

七、1. A 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. C

八、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A

- 九、1. How nice the day is!
2. What a big elephant!
3. Where is the supermarket?
4. How can I get to the museum?
5. It is

十、A. hospital B. zoo C. pet shop
D. cinema E. theatre

十一、1. C 2. E 3. F 4. A 5. B 6. D

- 十二、1. Because he loves the hot pot there.
2. We can take the No. 105 bus.
3. Yes, it is.

十三、(范文)

Dear Amy,

Please come to my birthday party at 7 p. m. on Sunday. Now I'll tell you how to get to my home. Turn left at the school, and then go straight for 3 minutes. Turn left at the hospital, and then turn right. You can see the science museum on your left. My home is next to the science museum.

Welcome!

Yours,

Chen Jie

Unit 2 Ways to go to school

Part A Let's try Let's talk

一、1. bike 2. bus 3. plane 4. ship 5. train

二、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. A

- 三、1. How do you come to school?
2. I often go to school on foot.
3. How often do the boys play football together?
4. 略

四、Task 1: 1. 一周一次 2. 总是
Task 2: 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T

Part A Let's learn Write and say

一、1. walks 2. by bus 3. rides 4. take
5. takes a plane

- 二、1. from; by car
2. How do you; Zhoushan; by ship
3. they; London; by plane
4. does she get; by plane 5. 略

三、略

Part B Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. Stop!
2. Don't turn right.



3. No parking.
4. Don't touch the door.
5. No smoking. 6. No littering.
7. No eating or drinking.

二、Task 1: 1. A 2. A

Task 2: 1. Please 2. Don't

Task 3: Please don't run. (设计图标略)

Part B Let's learn Role-play

一、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

二、1. library 2. Turn right 3. crossing 4. look left
5. look right

三、1. C car 2. B goes 3. C on

四、1. library 2. on foot 3. get 4. taxi 5. fast
6. take 7. cheap 8. subway 9. fast/cheap
10. cheap/fast

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up

一、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. C

二、1. B by bus 2. E by sled
3. C walk 4. D by ferry
5. A on horseback

三、1. × 2. × 3. × 4. √ 5. ×
6. × 7. √ 8. × 9. √ 10. ×

四、B→D→A→C→E

五、1. B 2. G 3. E 4. D 5. A

六、1. She goes to school on foot.
2. Because she works in Eliza's school.
3. Because the place he works is far from his home.
4. 12 times a year.
5. They go to the library by bike.

七、1. ⑥④②① (答案不唯一)

2. Hello, I am Amy. This winter holiday, my family will go to Sanya on vacation. How can we get there? Listen to me.

We can get to Guangzhou from our home by train. And then we can take the bus from Guangzhou to Xuwen. In Xuwen, we can take a big ship to Haikou. It will take us about 2 hours. At last, we can get to Sanya from Haikou by car. We can rent a car for our trip.

Unit 2 单元提升

[听力材料]

一、1. I go to school by sled.

2. Don't turn right.
3. Please turn left at the crossing.
4. Don't touch the door.
5. The boy goes to school on horseback.
6. No parking.

二、1. Where is the bookstore?

2. How do you go to school?

3. Don't touch the door. It's dangerous.

4. It's a red light now.

5. I am on the ferry.

三、1. M: Hi, Lily. How do you go to school?

W: I go to school on foot.

2. W: Where is the hospital?

M: Look at that crossing. It's over there.

3. W: How does your father go to work?

M: He drives a car to work.

4. W: Tom, please do not shout in the library.

M: Oh, sorry!

5. W: Don't run, John. It's dangerous. And you must wear a life jacket.

M: OK!

四、Mike wants to go to the post office. It is far from his home. He can take the No. 7 bus. The bus stop is next to the restaurant near his home. Mike walks to the bus stop. He goes straight and turns right at the crossing. He must pay attention to the traffic lights. The bus stop is on his right.

[参考答案]

一、2 3 5 6 1 4

二、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. C

三、1. C 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A

四、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F

五、2. subway 3. pink 4. boat

5. fast (答案不唯一)

六、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. B

七、1. How; on foot 2. slow down; stop 3. by bus

4. by car; by car 5. by plane; by ship

八、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. C

7. A 8. A 9. C 10. A

九、Task 1:

Name	Place	Way
John	Sanya	by ship
Amy	Venice	by plane
Mike	Beijing	by train
Linda	Beijing	by train

- Task 2: 1. He can see many sea creatures.
2. She can get here and there in Venice by gondola.
3. He wants to visit the Great Wall and the Summer Palace.
4. No, they won't.

十、1. 略

2. (范文) Hello, I am Xiaohong. I am 11 years old. I am a student. My school is near my home. Usually I go to school on foot. Sometimes I ride a bike to school. My father is a firefighter. He always goes to work by car. My mother is a nurse. She often goes to work by subway. But sometimes she works at night, so she drives a car to the hospital. Mingming is my best friend. He often goes to school by subway. It's fast and cheap.

Unit 3 My weekend plan

Part A Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. E 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D
二、1. C 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. AB
三、1. B 2. D 3. A 4. E 5. C

Part A Let's learn Make a plan

- 一、1. take a trip 2. go to the supermarket
3. visit my grandparents 4. see a film
5. play the *erhu* 6. play football
二、1. be 2. go 3. are 4. do 5. draw
三、1. He is going to do his homework.
2. They are going to plant a tree.
3. Yes, they are.
4. Yes, they do.

- 四、(范文) Hello, I am Xiaohong. The weekend is coming. I am going to do my homework on Saturday morning. My family are going to have a picnic in the afternoon. On Sunday, we are going to visit my grandparents. And we are going to have a big dinner with them. Then we are going to walk back.

Part B Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. B 2. A 3. A
二、1. What are you going to do this summer?
2. Where are they going to play basketball?
3. When is she going to visit her grandparents?
4. Who is going to see a film tonight?

5. 略

- 三、3 4 1 2 5

- 四、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T

Part B Let's learn Role-play

- 一、1. A postcard 2. C comic book
3. B dictionary 4. D word book

- 二、1. AB 2. B 3. AB 4. B

- 三、1. B 2. E 3. D 4. C 5. A

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up

- 一、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. C

- 二、1. A 2. A 3. C 4. ABC 5. B

- 三、1. D 2. B 3. A 4. E 5. C

- 四、1. They are going to plant flowers in the garden.
2. He is going to send a postcard to his pen pal.
3. What are Linda's family going to do on Sunday?

- 五、1. make dumplings
2. have a big dinner
3. get red envelopes
4. let off fireworks
5. watch TV

- 六、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. C
7. A 8. C 9. B 10. A

七、1. 略

2. (范文) Hello, I'm Xiaoming. I am going to have an English class on Saturday morning and play football on Saturday afternoon. And I am going to see a film with my friends in the evening. On Sunday, I am going to clean my room in the morning and go swimming in the afternoon. And I am going to watch TV with my family in the evening.

Unit 3 单元提升

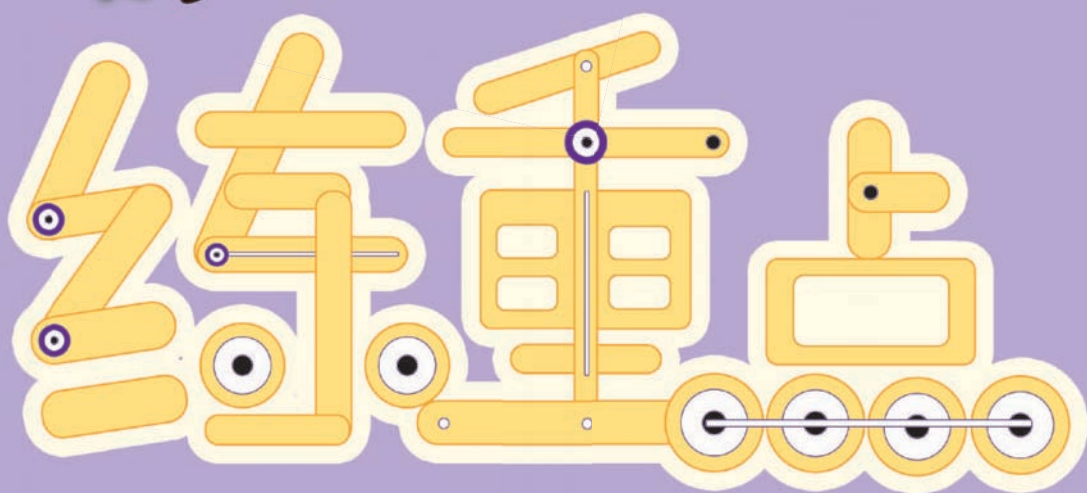
[听力材料]

- 一、1. I am going to have an art lesson on Sunday.
2. My cousin sent a postcard to me.
3. Usually we visit our grandparents once a week.
4. I love the books about space.
5. Tonight we will have a big dinner together.
二、1. My uncle is going to cook for us on our Family Day.
2. Sarah will visit her grandparents tomorrow.
3. My family are going to take a trip this summer.
4. They are going to make a snowman in winter.

冲刺名校必备



黄冈小状元



六年级英语上 **R1P**

- 阅读素养训练
- 参考答案及听力材料



阅读素养训练

Topic 1 Health

Lesson 1 Fast food



朗读音频

Food is very important to everyone, but not everyone knows which food is good. Many Western people think that fast food is very **convenient**. They like to have lunch in fast food restaurants, like KFC. They eat fast food, such as hamburgers, sandwiches, fried chicken and French fries. They want to buy delicious fast food, not healthy food.

Now a person in America eats about three hamburgers and four bags of potato chips every week. That is why more and more American people are becoming fat. Most of them know that fast food is not good for their health, but it **seems** that they can't stop eating it. Someone carries out a survey. It says 96% of American pupils know KFC. In America, 33% of children are too heavy. They will have health problems later in life. Of course, it's not only young people who are getting heavier. It's all Americans!



Word bank

convenient/kən'vi:niənt/adj. 方便的

seem/si:m/v. 好像；似乎



Exercises

I. Read and choose. 读一读，选择正确的答案。

- () 1. (多选题) The phrase “potato chip” means _____.
A. a kind of fast food B. a kind of healthy food C. a kind of snack
- () 2. Why are more and more people in America becoming fat? (逻辑训练: **Identifying cause and effect** “辨别因果关系”)
A. Because they don't eat meat.
B. Because they eat too much healthy food.
C. Because they eat too much fast food.

- () 3. What does the article tell us? (逻辑训练: **Finding the main idea** “找出主旨”)
- A. Fast food is very convenient.
B. Fast food is not good for health.
C. Fast food is delicious.

II. Read and judge. 读一读, 判断下列句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

- () 1. Fast food is very convenient and healthy.
() 2. 67% of American pupils don't know KFC.
() 3. 33% of American children will have health problems later in life.
() 4. Only young people are getting heavier.



Learn and try

be good for 与 be good to 的区别

be good for 对……有好处或益处

例如: Doing morning exercises is good for health. 做早操有益健康。

be good to 对某人友好、和蔼

例如: The young should be good to the old. 年轻人应该善待老人。

Choose and fill in the blanks. 选词, 并用其适当形式填空。

be good for be good to

1. My grandmother _____ always _____ me.
2. Anyway, the news seems to _____ you.

Lesson 2 Cut down on salt



朗
读
音
频

Are you having too much salt? You might not think so. In China, people eat on **average** about 12 grams of salt every day. The World Health **Organization suggests** that people only eat about 6 grams a day. Many people don't **realize** they are eating too much salt, because about 75% of the salt we eat is **already** in the food we buy, such as bread, soup and sausages. A small **amount** of salt is good for our health. People who eat more salt than they need may have high blood **pressure**. It's also bad for their **hearts**.

If you want to cut down on salt, please cut down on high salt foods because there is some salt in most foods. Some salted vegetables and salted fish are high in salt. You can enjoy them, but try to eat them less often.



Word bank

average/'ævərɪdʒ/n. 平均数；平均值

organization/ɔ:ɡənəɪ'zeɪʃn/n. 组织

suggest/sə'dʒest/v. 建议

realize/'rɪəlaɪz/v. 领会；认识到；意识到

already/ɔ:l'redi/adv. 已经；早已

amount/ə'maʊnt/n. 数量

pressure/'preʃə(r)/n. 压力；压强

heart/hɑ:t/n. 心脏



Exercises

I. Read and judge. 读一读，判断下列句子正（T）误（F）。

() 1. Many people realize they are eating too much salt.

() 2. If you eat too much salt, you will have high blood pressure and other illnesses.

II. Read and choose. 读一读，选择正确的答案。

() 1. We should eat about _____ grams of salt each day to keep healthy.

A. 6

B. 12

C. 18

() 2. We should eat _____ salted food.

A. many

B. less

C. more



Learn and try

cut down 与 cut down on 的区别

cut down 是“减少、削减”的意思，表示直接把某物去掉或砍掉。

例如：cut down production 减少产量 cut down trees 砍树

cut down on 表示“减少……的量”，表示把某物的量减少一部分。

例如：The doctors have told me to cut down on smoking. 医生告诉我要少抽烟。

Lesson 3 Healthy or unhealthy?



朗读音频

Amy: What did you have for breakfast today, Mike?

Mike: I had some **instant** noodles and some cola. I had these for breakfast yesterday, too.



阅读素养训练

Topic 1 Health

Lesson 1 Fast food

◆ Exercises

I. 1. AC 2. C 3. B

II. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F

◆ Learn and try

1. is; good to 2. be good for

Lesson 2 Cut down on salt

◆ Exercises

I. 1. F 2. T

II. 1. A 2. B

Lesson 3 Healthy or unhealthy?

◆ Exercises

1. some instant noodles and some cola
2. eat an egg, some fruit and drink some milk
3. have breakfast 4. healthy
5. have breakfast every day
6. some bread, an egg, an orange and some carrot juice
7. healthy

Topic 2 Protect the environment

Lesson 1 Waste sorting

◆ Exercises

I. 1. C 2. C 3. A

II. 1. 红色—C 2. 蓝色—A 3. 黄色—D
4. 绿色—B

◆ Learn and try

harmful

Lesson 2 Earth Day

◆ Exercises

I. 1. B 2. B 3. ABC 4. BC

- II. 1. We should save water. We should tell our parents to go out by bus or by bike more.
2. We shouldn't cut down too many trees because trees help keep air clean. (答案不唯一)

Topic 3 Jobs

Lesson 1 Dream jobs

◆ Exercises

I. 1. B 2. A 3. AB

II. 1. He's going to study at a lawyer office to learn more skills first.

2. No, he won't.

3. 略

◆ Learn and try

1. other 2. others

Lesson 2 Guess the jobs

◆ Exercises

I. 1. F 2. T

II. 1. A 2. B

III. 1. —D 2. —C 3. —B 4. —A

◆ Learn and try

1. my 2. their

Topic 4 Travel

Lesson 1 Monkey King hit White-Bone Monster

◆ Exercises

I. 2 5 7 3 1 6 4

- II. 1. They were very hungry and thirsty.
2. Because Tangseng thought they were kind people and Monkey King killed them.

Lesson 2 Welcome to London!

◆ Exercises

I. 1. B 2. C

- II. 1. Big Ben; the London Eye; the British Museum; Hyde Park; Tower Bridge
2. football
3. rains; umbrellas

III. I want to visit Buckingham Palace. (答案不唯一)

Topic 5 Science and technology

Lesson 1 The Internet

◆ Exercises

I. 1. B 2. A 3. A

- II. 1. World Wide Web
2. computer networks
3. buy; sell

Lesson 2 Smart home cameras

◆ Exercises

I. 1. B 2. C 3. ABC

II. 1. T 2. F 3. T

- III. 1. Yes, it can.
2. It's very useful. (答案不唯一)

素养抽测卷一 (Unit 1-Unit 2)

时间：60 分钟 满分：100 分



听力音频

[illegible]

Listening Part (40分) ✨

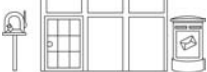
一、听录音，选出你所听到的单词、短语或句子。（10分）

- () 1. A. cinema B. crossing C. children
- () 2. A. traffic B. train C. right
- () 3. A. ship B. slow C. side
- () 4. A. walk B. will C. want
- () 5. A. next to B. nature park C. pay attention to
- () 6. A. get there B. come to school C. go to school
- () 7. A. What a great museum!
C. What a big library!
- () 8. A. There is a pet shop in my city.
C. There is a hospital in my city.
- () 9. A. The bus is coming!
C. The subway is coming!
- () 10. A. Is there a park in your town?
C. Is there a theatre in your town?
- B. What an interesting film!
- B. There is a school in my city.
- B. The taxi is coming!
- B. Is there a restaurant in your town?


二、听录音，选出与你所听到的内容相符的图片。（5分）

- Figure 1 consists of three panels. Panel A shows a maze with a start point (indicated by a small circle) and a goal point (indicated by a small circle). Panel B shows an alarm clock. Panel C shows a compass rose with cardinal directions (N, S, E, W) and intermediate directions (NE, SE, SW, NW).


- () 3. A.




B.




C.




() 4. A.



B.



C.



() 5. A.

商店	学校
图书馆	动物园

B.

剧院	学校
体育馆	

C.

学校	图书馆
电影院	公园

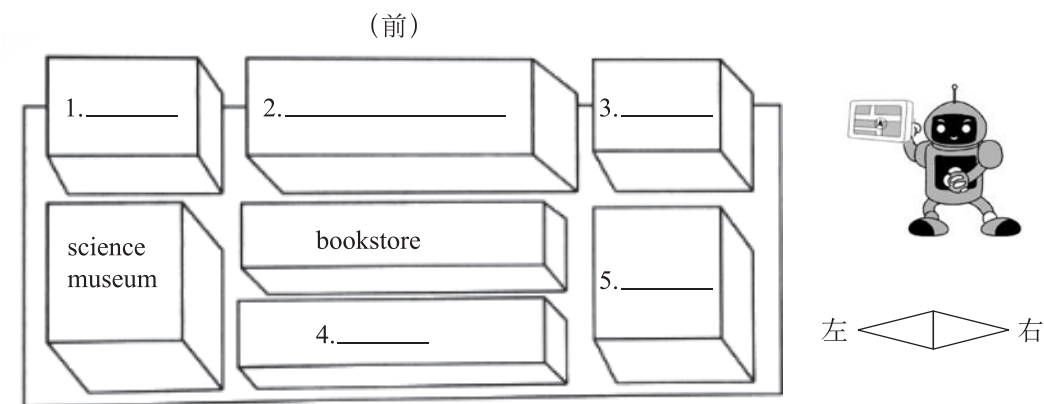
三、听对话，选择正确的答案。(5分)

- () 1. Where is the bookstore?
A. It's near the gym.
B. It's next to the hospital.
C. It's next to the supermarket.
- () 2. Is there a forest near here?
A. No, there isn't.
B. Yes, there is.
C. Sorry, I don't know.
- () 3. How does that man go to work every day?
A. By car.
B. On foot.
C. By bus.
- () 4. Where is Amy's grandpa?
A. He's in the shopping mall.
B. He's in the restaurant.
C. He's near the restaurant.
- () 5. What does Sam want to do in the post office?
A. He wants to send a postcard.
B. He wants to post a letter.
C. He wants to buy a postcard.

四、听对话，判断下列句子正（T）误（F）。（10分）

- () 1. Amy wants to go to Zhongbai Supermarket.
- () 2. Amy asks a policeman for help.
- () 3. The supermarket is in front of the hospital.
- () 4. Amy can go to the supermarket by bike.
- () 5. Amy can take the No. 2 bus and get off at the library.

五、听短文，完成下面的地图。(10分)



- Writing Part (60') ✨

六、将下列单词改变一个字母，使其变成与出行方式有关的单词。（5分）

1. like
2. cat
3. food
4. shop
5. but

七、用所给词的适当形式填空。(5分)

1. A _____(talk) robot!
2. You must pay attention to the traffic _____(light).
3. Sometimes Lily _____(go) to the park by bus.
4. _____(be) there a gym in the city?
5. You're _____(look) at the wrong side again!

八、选择正确的答案。（有的可多选）（5分）

- () 1. Which is right?
A. Do you like pears? (↗)
B. It's next to the cinema. (↗)
C. Who is your science teacher? (↗)
- () 2. The bookstore is _____ the school.
A. next to B. beside C. in front of

- () 3. I often come to school by car, because it's _____.

A. fast B. near C. slow
- () 4. The bus is _____!

A. come B. coming C. comes
- () 5. In Alaska, it snows a lot in winter, so some kids go to school _____.

A. by ferry B. by bus C. by sled

九、按要求完成下列各题。(5 分)

1. does come to friend How school your(?) (连词成句)
- _____
2. The hospital is near the supermarket. (对画线部分提问)
- _____
3. There is a restaurant next to the bookstore. (改为一般疑问句)
- _____
4. How do your parents go to Beijing? (用 train 作答)
- _____
5. Turn right. (改为否定句)
- _____

十、选出句中错误的一项，并在横线上改正。(5 分)

- () 1. I can buy some book in the bookstore.

A B C

- () 2. What a interesting story!

A B C

- () 3. Turn left of the school, and then go straight.

A B C

- () 4. Usually she goes to the park by foot.

A B C

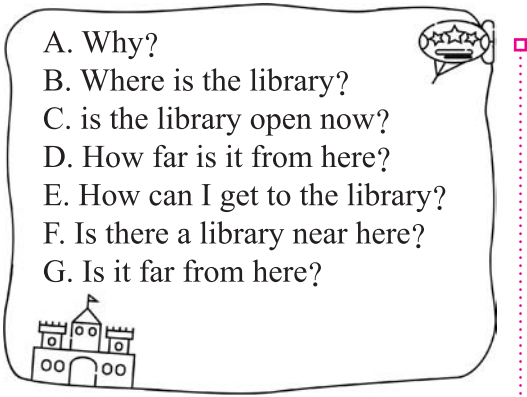
- () 5. You can by the No. 2 bus to the museum.

A B C

十一、选择合适的句子补全对话。(有两项多余) (5 分)

Mike: Hi, Amy. 1. _____
Amy: It's behind the cinema.
Mike: 2. _____
Amy: No. It's not far.
Mike: 3. _____

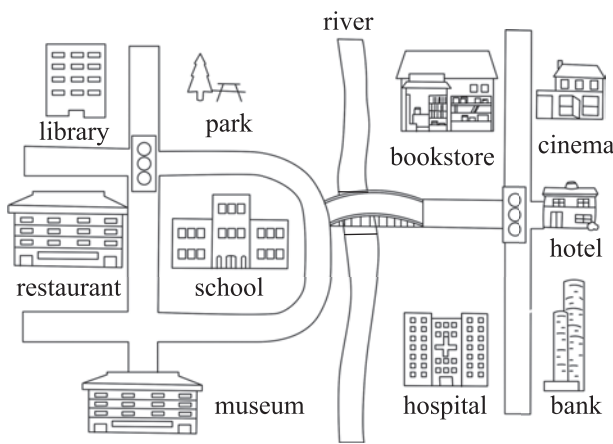
Amy: Go straight. Then turn left at Red Street.
Mike: Thanks. By the way, 4. _____
Amy: Oh, I don't think so.
Mike: 5. _____
Amy: Because it's 5:05 p. m. now. The library closes at 5 p. m.
Mike: Oh, I see. Then let's go to see a film now.
Amy: OK.



十二、根据上下文或所给提示，补全对话。(10 分)

A: Excuse me, can you tell me the way 1. _____ Hongxing Hotel?
B: Sure. 2. _____ right out 3. _____ your house. Then 4. _____ straight on, and take the 5. _____ (2) turning on the right.
A: Is the hotel 6. _____ my right or on my 7. _____?
B: It's on your left.
A: 8. _____ can I get there?
B: You can get there 9. _____ bus.
A: Which bus can I take?
B: You can 10. _____ the No. 102 bus to get there.
A: Thank you very much.
B: You're welcome.

十三、看图，回答问题。(10 分)



1. Can you see any traffic lights on the map?
- _____
2. How can I get to the library from the museum?
- _____

3. Where is the bank?
It's _____ the hospital.
4. Is there a river near the bookstore?

5. Is the restaurant next to the hotel?

十四、任务型阅读。(6 分)

Every year many people get hurt or lose their lives in traffic accidents(事故) in China. How can we keep safe? First, we should obey(遵守) the traffic rules. We can only cross the street when the light is green. Second, before we cross the road, we must look both ways—look left, look right, and look left again. Third, we shouldn't play on the street. Last, it's good to help children and old people cross the street. We should be careful when we cross the street.

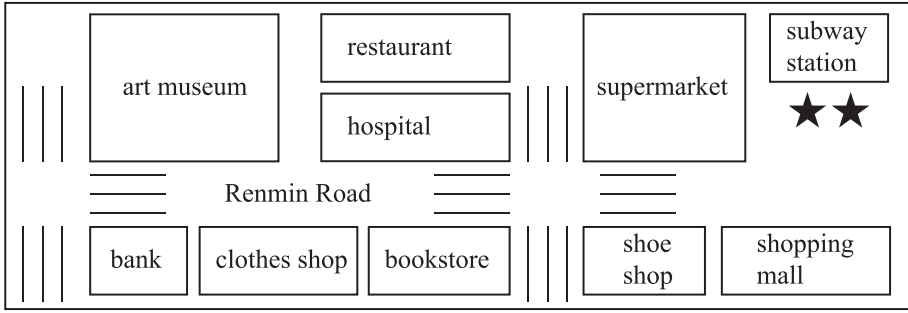
Task 1: 阅读短文，判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。(5分)

- () 1. Many people get hurt or lose their lives in traffic accidents.
- () 2. We can't cross the street when the light is red or yellow.
- () 3. When we cross the road, we must first look right, and then look left.
- () 4. Playing on the street is dangerous.
- () 5. We can help children and old people cross the street.

Task 2: 请设计一条以“遵守交通规则”为主题的英语标语。(1分)

十五、书面表达。(4 分)

玛丽和妈妈要去美术馆看展览。请根据下面的地图和提示词，写一写她们应如何步行到达美术馆吧!(开头已给出)



提示词: first, then, turn right/left, go straight, across from
Mary and her mother are in front of the subway station. They are going to the art museum.

素养抽测卷一 (Unit 1-Unit 2)

[听力材料]

- 一、1. crossing 2. traffic 3. slow 4. walk
5. pay attention to 6. come to school
7. What an interesting film!
8. There is a hospital in my city.
9. The taxi is coming!
10. Is there a restaurant in your town?
- 二、1. The map can help you find a place.
2. Turn left, please.
3. Wu Yifan wants to see a film in it.
4. Some children go to school by ferry.
5. The library is near the zoo.
- 三、1. W: Mike, I want to buy an English book.
Where is the bookstore?
M: It's far from here. You can go by bus.
You should get off at the supermarket.
The bookstore is next to the supermarket.
2. W: Welcome to my village!
M: Thank you! It's beautiful. Is there a forest near here?
W: No, but there is a park near here.
3. W: Who's that man?
M: He's my uncle. He's a maths teacher.
W: How does he go to work?
M: He walks to work every day.
4. M: Is your grandpa in the shopping mall, Amy?
W: No, he isn't. He's hungry. He is eating sandwiches.
M: Is he in the restaurant?
W: Yes, he is.
5. W: Where do you want to go, Sam?
M: I want to go to the post office.
W: Why?
M: Because I want to buy a postcard.
- 四、(Amy is asking a policeman for help.)
Amy: Excuse me, I want to go to Zhongbai Supermarket. Where is it?
Policeman: It's next to the hospital.
Amy: How can I get there?
Policeman: First, turn right and take the No.2 bus at the bus stop. Next, get off at the library. Then, cross the street. You will be in front of Zhongbai Supermarket.

Amy: Thank you.

Policeman: You're welcome.

- 五、Hello! I'm Robin. I have GPS now! Look! This is a map of my city. There is a bookstore in my city. The post office is in front of the bookstore. On the left of the bookstore, there is a science museum. In front of the science museum, there is a hospital. On the right of the bookstore, there is a school. The cinema is behind the bookstore. There is a zoo on the right side of the post office.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. B
8. C 9. B 10. B
- 二、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A
- 三、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C
- 四、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
- 五、1. hospital 2. post office 3. zoo
4. cinema 5. school
- 六、1. bike 2. car 3. foot 4. ship 5. bus
- 七、1. talking 2. lights 3. goes 4. Is 5. looking
- 八、1. A 2. ABC 3. A 4. B 5. C
- 九、1. How does your friend come to school?
2. Where is the hospital?
3. Is there a restaurant next to the bookstore?
4. They go to Beijing by train.
5. Don't turn right.
- 十、1. C books 2. A an 3. B at 4. C on
5. A take
- 十一、1. B 2. G 3. E 4. C 5. A
- 十二、1. to 2. Turn 3. of 4. go 5. second
6. on 7. left 8. How 9. by 10. take
- 十三、1. Yes, I can.
2. Go straight and turn left at the second crossing.
3. across from
4. Yes, there is.
5. No, it isn't.
- 十四、Task 1: 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
Task 2: Follow the traffic rules and stay safe on the road! (答案不唯一)
- 十五、(范文) Mary and her mother are in front of the subway station. They are going to the art museum. First, they should turn right at the supermarket. Then they should go straight and they will see the art museum at the second crossing. It's across from the bank.

同步作业类 **附** 夹册 (含答案)

五年级英语 **上** 最新修订

主编 万志勇

网小状元 黄作业本



扫内文二维码**免费**获取听力资源



龍門書局 | 龙门品牌 · 学子至爱
www.longmenshujia.com

班级_____ 姓名_____ 学号_____

RP



Unit 3 My weekend plan

A. Let's try Let's talk

一、根据图片填单词,补全词组。



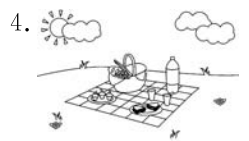
_____ homework



_____ pictures



_____ an English class



_____ for a picnic



_____ a snowman



_____ a Chinese lesson

二、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. What are you _____ tonight?
A. go to do B. going do C. going to do
- () 2. We're going to have an _____ lesson.
A. art B. Chinese C. music
- () 3. I can _____ in summer.
A. go swimming B. going swimming C. swimming

三、选择 be 动词的正确形式填在相应的横线上。

1. He _____ (am/is) going to watch TV tomorrow.
2. I _____ (am/are) going to do my homework.
3. They _____ (is/are) going to have a maths lesson.
4. What _____ (am/are) you going to do tomorrow?
5. She _____ (is/are) going to go ice-skating.

四、仿照例子写对话。



例: they A: What are they going to do?
play football B: They are going to play football.



1. she A: _____
wash clothes B: _____



2. he A: _____
swim B: _____

五、复述课文。根据课文 Let's try 和 Let's talk 的内容,用合适的单词或词组补全短文。

It's Saturday morning. Sarah is 1. _____ the phone with Mike. Mike can't 2. _____ today. He is going fishing this afternoon and he's going to 3. _____ tomorrow. But he has to 4. _____ now. Sarah is going to 5. _____ tomorrow. They are going to 6. _____ in Renmin Park.



A. Let's learn Make a plan

一、根据句意和首字母提示填单词,完成句子。

- I'm going to v_____ my grandparents tonight.
- Sarah is going to take a t_____ next week.
- They are going to see a f_____ this evening.
- I want to go to the s_____ to buy some food tomorrow.

二、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- What _____ your grandparents going to do tomorrow?
A. am B. is C. are
- Mike has _____ his homework now.
A. do B. to do C. doing
- I usually _____ in summer.
A. go swimming B. am going swimming C. swimming
- Can we _____ in a supermarket? —Yes, of course.
A. take a trip B. buy vegetables C. see a film
- _____ are you going to do tonight? —I'm going to watch TV.
A. What B. Where C. Who

三、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

Sarah: Hi, Chen Jie. What are you going to do this morning?

Chen Jie: This morning, I'm going to the supermarket.

Sarah: Cool. What about this afternoon?

Chen Jie: I'm going to visit my grandparents this afternoon. Tomorrow I'm going to take a trip with my grandparents. What about you?

Sarah: I'm going to see a film this evening.

Chen Jie: See a film? I like films. Can I go with you?

Sarah: Of course.

任务一:阅读对话,将下列图片与相应的时间连线。



A. this evening B. this afternoon C. tomorrow D. this morning

任务二:阅读对话,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

- Chen Jie is going to the supermarket this morning.
- Chen Jie is going to take a trip with Sarah.
- Sarah is going to see a film this evening.

四、书面表达。



凡事预则立,不预则废。假如你是 Mike,下面是你和爸爸妈妈的明日活动安排表。请你根据表格内容写一篇小短文。要求:准确运用 be going to...结构;语句通顺,书写规范;不少于 5 句话。

When Who	tomorrow morning	tomorrow afternoon	tomorrow evening
I	do my homework	wash my clothes	watch TV
Father	read books	clean the rooms	watch TV
Mother	go to the supermarket	clean the rooms	watch TV

My name's Mike. I am going to _____ tomorrow morning. _____



(续表)

	Activities	When
	see a film	3. _____
	4. _____	next weekend

四、听短文,把短文补充完整。

Hello, I'm Lily. I'm going to do my 1. _____ this morning. I'm going to 2. _____ this 3. _____. I'm going to see a film this 4. _____. I'm going to the 5. _____ with my mother tomorrow morning. I'm going to 6. _____ tomorrow afternoon. I'm going to watch TV 7. _____ evening.



Writing Part

五、读一读,按时间顺序用数字给下列单词或词组排排队。

() this morning

() tonight

() next week

() this afternoon

() tomorrow afternoon

() tomorrow morning

六、选择每组中不同类的单词,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. A. morning B. evening C. going
 () 2. A. tonight B. visit C. see
 () 3. A. aunt B. film C. uncle
 () 4. A. week B. take C. make

阶段复习训练

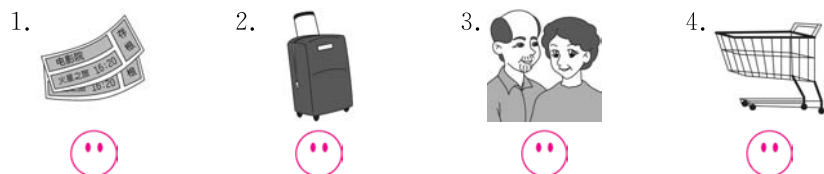


Listening Part



听力音频

一、听录音,判断下列图片与你所听到的内容是否相符,相符的画“☺”,不相符的画“☹”。





二、听录音,选择相应的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. A. Yes, I can. B. Yes, she can. C. Yes, he can.
 () 2. A. I'm going to draw pictures. B. I do my homework.
 C. I can go for a picnic.
 () 3. A. Here you are. B. Thank you. C. Of course you can.
 () 4. A. At the supermarket.
 B. She is going to take a trip.
 C. He is going to go ice-skating.

三、听短对话,选择合适的单词或词组,将其序号填在相应的横线上。

A. tomorrow B. wash clothes C. this morning D. watch TV

	Activities	When
	read a book	1. _____
	2. _____	tonight

七、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. What are you going to do _____ today?
A. on B. / C. in
- () 2. We are going to _____ a music class.
A. have B. has C. having
- () 3. It's seven o'clock. I _____ get up.
A. can B. am C. have to
- () 4. I'm going to _____ my grandparents.
A. visit B. watch C. look
- () 5. We are going to fly kites _____ Renmin Park.
A. on B. to C. in

八、判断下列对话与图片是否相符,相符的打“√”,不相符的打“×”。

- () 1. —I'm going to go swimming!
—Sounds great!
- () 2. —I'm going to do my homework tomorrow.
—Me too.
- () 3. —What is your brother going to do?
—He's going to draw a picture.
- () 4. —What are they going to do?
—They are going to play football.



2. I _____ (take) a trip next month.
3. She has to _____ (do) her homework this evening.
4. Can you _____ (go) for a picnic with us tomorrow?
5. They _____ (see) a film tonight.
6. I often _____ (draw) pictures in the park.

十、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

Mike: What are you going to do next week?

Sarah: I'm going to take a trip with my sister.

Mike: Have a good time!

Sarah: Thank you! How about you? What are you going to do?

Mike: I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle.

Sarah: How can you get to their home?

Mike: I want to get there by bike. It's not far.

Sarah: Good idea!

任务一:阅读对话,选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Sarah is going to take a trip _____.
A. next week B. today C. tomorrow
- () 2. Sarah is going to take a trip with her _____.
A. sister B. brother C. aunt
- () 3. Mike is going to visit his _____.
A. parents B. aunt and uncle C. grandparents
- () 4. Mike is going to get there by _____.
A. car B. bus C. bike
- () 5. Mike's aunt and uncle's home is _____.
A. big B. near C. far

任务二:请根据实际情况回答问题。

What are you going to do next week?

九、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. John _____ (go) to the park this afternoon.



B. Let's try Let's talk

一、选择正确的单词,并用其适当形式将对话补充完整。



1. — _____ are you going tomorrow? —To the museum.
2. — _____ are you going to do? —I'm going to see a film.
3. — _____ are you going? —This morning.
4. — _____ don't you go to school on foot? —Because my home is far.

二、给下列对话选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。



- () 1. —Where is Wu Yifan going? —He is going to the park.
- () 2. —How is John going to take a trip? —He is going to take a trip by car.
- () 3. —What is Mike going to do? —He is going to buy some books.
- () 4. —What is Oliver going to do? —He is going to watch TV.

三、给下列问句选择合适的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Is the picture for you?
- () 2. Why not go on Tuesday?
It's half price then.
- () 3. Where are they going?

- A. Good idea.
 - B. They are going to the supermarket.
 - C. Yes, it is.

四、按要求完成下列各题。

1. She is going to take a trip next weekend. (对画线部分提问)
_____ she going to do next weekend?
2. Oliver is going to visit me next week. (改为否定句)
Oliver _____ to visit me next week.
3. They are going to see a film tomorrow. (对画线部分提问)
_____ they going to see a film?

五、用数字给下列句子排序。

- () I'm going to the bookstore.
- () What are you going to buy?
- (1) Where are you going this Sunday?
- () When are you going to the bookstore?
- (6) At 9 o'clock.
- () I'm going to buy a new dictionary.

六、复述课文。根据课文 Let's try 和 Let's talk 的内容,用合适的单词或词组补全短文。

John is on his way home. He sees Amy. Amy is going to buy some fruit. John is going to buy some ice cream for his cousin Jack because Jack is going to visit him 1. _____. They are going to the 2. _____. They are going to 3. _____ about space travel. They are going next 4. _____. But Amy says they should go on 5. _____ because it's half price then.



B. Let's learn Role-play

一、根据句意用合适的单词或词组补全句子。




- I have an English _____. It's a big book. It's my good friend. It helps me understand new words.
- Do you have a _____? The pictures are very beautiful and the stories are funny.
- I'm going to buy a _____. I want to read some stories.
- My sister has a _____. It's a card. It's from her good friend in the UK.
- This is a _____. You can learn animal words, food words and fruit words and so on from it.

二、给下列问句选择相应的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. What are you going to do next week?
- () 2. Do you have a word book?
- () 3. Where are you going?
- () 4. When are you going?
- () 5. Can I help you?

- A. I'm going to Beihai Park.
B. No, I don't.
C. Yes. I want to buy some comic books.
D. This evening.
E. We are going to play football.

三、根据图片提示补全对话。

1.  2.  3.  4. 

Where are you going?
I'm going to the 1. _____.

What are you going to do there?
I'm going to 2. _____.

How are you going?
By 3. _____.

When are you going?
4. _____.

四、根据购物清单,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

Mrs Smith's Shopping List

- Turkey
- Stuffing
- Cornbread
- Pies
- Potatoes
- Fruit salad
- French coffee

John's Shopping List

- Milk
- Apples
- Eggs
- Toilet rolls
- Bananas
- Bread

Amy's SHOPPING LIST

- DRESS
- SHOES
- BAG
- SKIRT
- JEANS

- () 1. Mrs Smith is going to buy a turkey and vegetable salad.
- () 2. John is going to buy some milk, bread, eggs, apples, bananas and toilet rolls.
- () 3. Amy is going to buy a dress, a bag, a shirt, a pair of shoes and jeans.



B. Read and write

一、读一读,猜一猜是什么节日,将答案序号填入题前括号里。

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. Spring Festival | B. Mid-Autumn Festival |
| C. China's National Day | D. International Nurses Day |
| E. Lantern Festival | F. Dragon Boat Festival |

- () 1. It's also called Chinese New Year. It's usually in January or February. Our family will get together and have a big dinner. Children will get lucky money.
- () 2. It's on October 1st. It's the birthday of our country. We will have a seven-day holiday. We can take a trip.
- () 3. It's usually in May or June. People will eat zongzi. In some places people will have dragon boat races. It's to commemorate(纪念) the death of the great poet Qu Yuan.
- () 4. It's on the fifteenth of August in Chinese calendar. Family members will get together and eat mooncakes on that day.
- () 5. It's on May 12th. It was set up in memory of Florence Nightingale. It's for all the nurses. They are angels.
- () 6. It's on the fifteenth day of the first lunar month. People will eat yuanxiao and guess lantern riddles.

二、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. My _____ are going to the supermarket.
A. friend B. brother C. family
- () 2. We are going to have a _____ dinner.
A. big B. long C. tall

- () 3. Tomorrow is Mid-Autumn Festival. We are going to _____ mooncakes.
A. do B. drink C. make
- () 4. My mother always tells _____ stories.
A. we B. us C. I
- () 5. This is a poem _____ the moon.
A. about B. around C. after

三、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. I'm going to _____ (buy) a pen this morning.
2. Amy wants to buy some _____ (mooncake) in the supermarket.
3. When are you _____ (go)?
4. Can you help _____ (we)?

四、阅读短文,选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

Tomorrow is China's National Day. We love this festival. My family will take a trip. We will go to Beijing by plane. We are going to visit Tian'anmen and the Palace Museum. We will have a good time.

- () 1. Today is _____.
A. September 30th B. October 1st C. September 10th
- () 2. My family will _____.
A. get together B. take a trip C. eat mooncakes
- () 3. We will go to Beijing _____.
A. by bus B. by train C. by plane
- () 4. We aren't going to visit _____.
A. the Great Wall B. the Palace Museum C. Tian'anmen
- () 5. We will have a good time on _____.
A. Mid-Autumn Festival B. National Day C. Christmas Day



B. Read and write & Tips for pronunciation

一、仿照例词,圈出每个单词中重读的音节。

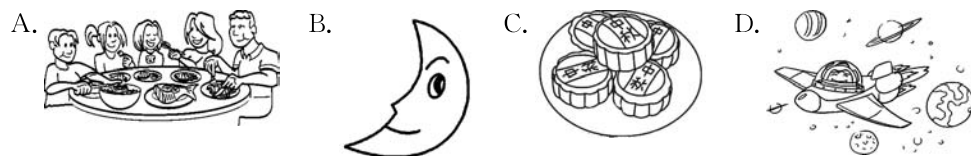
例: Sunday to morrow season

1. today 2. autumn 3. father
4. grandma 5. about 6. happy

二、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Her grandparents _____ get together.
A. are B. have C. will
- () 2. Autumn is coming. Let me _____ you a story about autumn.
A. speak B. tell C. talk
- () 3. He is going to _____ poems for his mother.
A. reads B. read C. reading

三、给下列句子选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。



- () 1. My family are going to have a big dinner.
- () 2. We eat mooncakes at Mid-Autumn Festival.
- () 3. My grandpa will tell us a story about space.
- () 4. Can you tell us something about the moon?

四、根据表格内容,仿照例句造句。

Who	What to do
Mike's mother	make some dumplings
John's brother	buy some mooncakes
Sarah and John	have a big dinner

例: —What is Mike's mother going to do?
—She is going to make some dumplings.

1. —What is John's brother going to do?
—He is going to _____.
2. —What are Sarah and John going to do?
—They are _____.

五、阅读短文,判断下列句子正误,正确的打“√”,错误的打“×”。

Friday

Dear Diary,

Tomorrow is a big day! I will be very happy. In the morning, I'm going to buy some delicious food, fresh apples and beautiful flowers with my parents. In the afternoon I will help my mother cook. We are going to have a big dinner together in the evening. After dinner my grandparents and my parents will give me some lucky money. Then we will watch TV. There will be a wonderful show on TV. It's the Spring Festival Gala. We will have so much fun tomorrow!

- () 1. Tomorrow is the eve of the Spring Festival. It's a big day!
- () 2. My parents and I are going to buy some food, oranges and flowers in the morning.
- () 3. I will get some nice presents after dinner.
- () 4. The Spring Festival Gala will be a wonderful TV show.



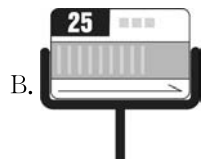
B. Let's check Let's wrap it up

一、根据句意选择相对应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。

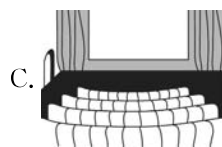
- () 1. I'm going to see a film in the _____.



- () 2. He is going to buy a word book in the _____.



- () 3. She is going to send a postcard in the _____.



- () 4. She is going to take a bus at the _____.



二、用下列所给单词,你能写出多少个句子?(最少写三个)

am
is
are

I
we
you
he/she
they

What
Where
When

going
going to

do

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

C. Story time

阅读课本本单元故事,按要求完成下列任务。

任务一:根据故事内容,回答下列问题。

1. What is Zoom going to do tomorrow?

2. Can Zoom learn to swim without going to a pool?

3. What is Zoom afraid of?

4. Can Zoom swim in the end?

5. Is Zip a good teacher?

任务二:根据故事内容,请你给想学游泳的小伙伴提一些建议,并完成下表。

Don't...	You should...
Don't learn to swim at home.	2. You should always remember: "_____."
1. Don't _____ water.	3. You should go to a _____.
Don't be lazy.	4. You should _____ every day.



单元检测



Listening Part



听力音频

一、听录音,用数字给下列图片排序。



()

()

()

()

二、听录音,选择正确的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

() 1. A. Tonight.

B. To the cinema.

C. I'm going to the supermarket.

() 2. A. Yes, I have. B. Yes, I do. C. I have a postcard.

() 3. A. I'm going to see a film.

B. By car.

C. I'm going to buy a word book.

三、听对话,根据对话内容补全下列对话。

1. Mike is going to buy an English _____ tomorrow morning.

2. The boy and the girl are going to see a film _____.

3. Amy is going to the supermarket _____.

四、听短文,根据短文内容将下列人物与其要买的物品连线。



五、听短文,根据短文内容选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

() 1. Tomorrow is _____.

A. Friday

B. Saturday

C. Sunday

() 2. Lucy is going to buy _____.

A. a dictionary

B. her favourite comic books

C. A and B

() 3. Is Lucy going to the bookstore by bike?

A. I don't know.

B. Yes, she is.

C. No, she isn't.

() 4. Lucy is going to the bookstore at _____.

A. 3:20

B. 2:00

C. 2:30

() 5. After that, Lucy is going to the _____.

A. post office

B. cinema

C. zoo



Writing Part

六、读单词,圈出每个单词中重读的音节。

1. subway

2. taxi

3. hospital

4. ferry

5. travel

6. helmet



七、选择可以替换句中画线部分同类的选项,将其序号填入题前括号里。

A. morning B. When C. Chinese D. dictionary E. read
F. science G. afternoon H. How I. dance J. comic book

- () 1. My grandparents are going to see a film tomorrow evening.
() 2. Where are you going?
() 3. Are they going to have a maths lesson next Monday?
() 4. Why not stay at home?
() 5. I'm going to the bookstore. I want to buy a word book.

八、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. My family are going to _____ together.
A. going B. get C. goes
() 2. I'm going to _____ a film with Mike.
A. see B. look C. read
() 3. There are _____ trees in the park.
A. lot of B. a lot C. lots of
() 4. What are you going to do _____?
A. there B. their C. where
() 5. Can _____ help _____?
A. you; I B. I; you C. you; my

九、给下列问句选择相应的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. What are you going to do this evening?
() 2. When is your sister going to the park?
() 3. Who are you going with?
() 4. Where is your friend going?
() 5. What are you going to buy, John?

A. I'm going to cook a big meal.
B. She is going there next Sunday.
C. He's going to the park.
D. I'm going to buy some notebooks.
E. I'm going with my parents.

十、假如你是 John,根据对话内容将右面的表格补充完整。

Chen Jie: Where are you going, John?

John: I'm going to Shanghai.

Chen Jie: What are you going to do there?

John: I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle.

Chen Jie: When are you going?

John: I'm going next week.

Chen Jie: Have a good time!

John: Thank you.

Where	
What	
When	

十一、Li Li 刚从香港转学到北京,她做了一份关于香港节日的手抄报。读手抄报,并按要求完成下列任务。

<p><u>A</u></p> <p>It is in winter. Usually my family eat a big dinner and watch TV together. After that, we often watch fireworks in the sky. 3. _____</p>	<p>1. _____</p> <p>It is in winter. It's on December 25th. On that day my dad is busy buying food and gifts for us. I'm so happy to send cards or get gifts. Oh, I love gifts so much. 4. _____</p>	<p>2. _____</p> <p>My favourite day is in autumn. On this day we can see the full moon. My parents tell me stories about the moon. I like the stories about Chang'e best. 5. _____</p>
---	---	--

任务一:选择相应的节日作为手抄报具体内容的小标题,完成第 1、2 小题(A 项已经给出)。

A. Spring Festival B. Mid-Autumn Festival C. Christmas Day

任务二:选择相应的句子把短文内容补充完整,完成第 3—5 小题。

D. And I like eating mooncakes.

E. Then I can get lucky money in red packets from my parents or grandparents.

F. I also like decorating(装饰) the Christmas tree.



期中复习巩固练习



Listening Part



听力音频

一、听录音,用数字给下列图片排序。



() () () () () ()

二、听录音,判断下列句子与你所听到的内容是否一致,一致的写“T”,不一致的写“F”。

- () 1. My aunt is going to make mooncakes.
- () 2. The post office is next to the museum.
- () 3. We're going to see a film about space travel.
- () 4. I must pay attention to the traffic lights.
- () 5. John is going to buy his favourite comic book.

三、听录音,选择正确的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. A. By car. B. Next week. C. I'm going to the library.
- () 2. A. I'm going to go ice-skating. B. I draw pictures. C. I can go for a picnic.
- () 3. A. By subway. B. To the park. C. I'm going to buy a comic book.
- () 4. A. Here you are. B. It's next to the bookstore. C. Go straight and turn right.

四、听对话,选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

(一)听第一段对话,完成第 1—3 小题。

- () 1. —Where is Mike going this afternoon?
—He's going to the _____.
A. bookstore B. library C. supermarket
- () 2. —What is Mike going to buy? —He's going to buy a _____.
A. word book B. storybook C. notebook
- () 3. —When is Mike going? —He's going at _____.
A. 3 o'clock B. 4 o'clock C. half past three

(二)听第二段对话,完成第 4、5 小题。

- () 4. —What is Tom going to do next weekend? —He's going to _____.
A. see a film B. take a trip C. go to the supermarket
- () 5. —Where is Tom going? —He is going to _____.
A. Beijing B. Wuhan C. Shanghai

五、听对话,写出所缺单词或词组。

W: Where is the 1. _____?

M: It's on the left side of the 2. _____.

W: How about the 3. _____?

M: It's behind the school.

W: Is the cinema next to the 4. _____?

M: Yes, it is.

W: Where is the 5. _____?

M: It's in front of the post office.



Writing Part

六、按照要求完成下列语音题。

(一)找出单词重读的音节,用“○”圈出来。

1. crossing 2. China 3. tonight 4. attention



(二)找出需要连读的地方,用“—”表示。

1. Can I read a book at the bookstore?
2. Turn right at the post office.

七、选择与句中画线部分不同类的选项,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. They are going to take a trip next month.
A. visit B. film C. see
- () 2. How can I get to the hospital?
A. tonight B. cinema C. bookstore
- () 3. Slow down and stop at a yellow light.
A. walk B. wait C. lesson
- () 4. Can I go there by subway?
A. train B. ship C. foot
- () 5. I'm going to buy a postcard.
A. dictionary B. notebook C. straight

八、猜谜语,在横线上写出谜底。

1. It's a book. It can tell you words' meanings. It's a _____ book.
2. This day is before Sunday. It's _____.
3. It's a place. You can see a film there. It's a _____.
4. I write "Happy New Year!" on the card and send it to my friend. It's a _____.
5. There are many pictures in this book. Kids like reading it very much. It's a _____.

九、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. —Do you have dictionaries? —_____.
A. Yes, I do B. Yes, you have C. No, I haven't
- () 2. Slow down and stop! It's a _____!
A. yellow light B. red light C. green light

- () 3. Hush, little boy, _____ say a word.
A. doesn't B. not C. don't
- () 4. My grandma will tell us a story _____ space.
A. about B. at C. to
- () 5. If you go by _____, you must wear a life jacket.
A. sled B. bike C. ferry

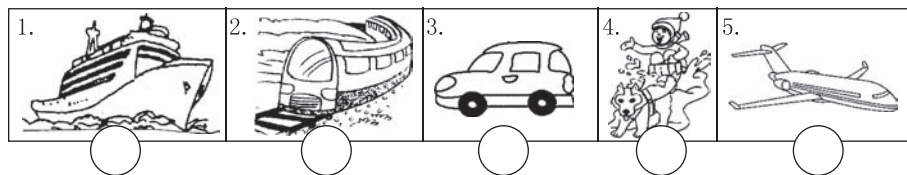
十、给下列句子选择相应的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Let's go to the nature park!
- () 2. Thank you.
- () 3. Where is your school?
- () 4. How do you get there?
- () 5. Where is she going?

- A. You're welcome. B. She's going to the bank.
C. It's next to the science museum. D. Hooray!
E. I get there by plane.

十一、给下列图片选择合适的句子,将其序号填入相应的圆圈里。

- A. Today it's warm and clear. I'm taking a fun trip by car. I enjoy driving a car.
B. I'm flying over the sea on a plane. The plane is the best way to travel far.
C. I enjoy my trip on the snow by sled. It is so interesting and amazing. Cool! I like it.
D. I'm travelling on the sea in a big ship. I'm happy but I feel dizzy(眩晕的).
E. I'm travelling up the mountain on a train. It takes a long time but it's cheap.



十二、选择合适的单词补全短文,每空填一词,每词用一次。

restaurant hospital eat left next
delicious on pizza get turn

Wu Yifan and Mike are hungry. They want to eat 1. _____ in a great Italian restaurant. But where is the 2. _____? It's 3. _____ to the park 4. _____ Dongfang Street. How can they 5. _____ there? Turn 6. _____ at the bookstore. Then 7. _____ right at the 8. _____. And they can find the restaurant. The food in the restaurant is 9. _____. They can't wait to 10. _____ the pizza there!

十三、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在相应的横线上。

A: Excuse me. I'm new here. I want to go to the post office. 1. _____

B: It's near the bookstore.

A: 2. _____

B: Yes, it is. 3. _____

A: I'm going to buy a postcard, and send it to my cousin. 4. _____

B: You can take the No. 302 bus. Get off at the hospital, and then turn left. You can see it.

A: 5. _____

B: You're welcome.

A. Is it far from here?
B. How can I get there?
C. Thank you!
D. Where is it?
E. What are you going to do there?

十四、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

(Chen Jie will come to John's home. She calls John.)

Chen Jie: Hi, John. This is Chen Jie.

John: Hi, Chen Jie. Where are you?

Chen Jie: I'm in front of the bookstore. How can I get to your home?

John: You can take the No. 188 bus.

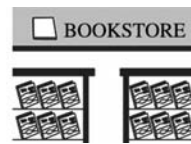
Chen Jie: But where is the bus stop?

John: You can go to the zoo. And the bus stop is next to the zoo.

Chen Jie: Oh, I know. Thank you.

John: You're welcome.

任务一:根据对话,用数字将下列图片按正确路线排序。



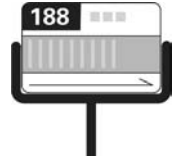
()



()



()



()

任务二:根据对话,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

() 1. Chen Jie wants to go to John's home.

() 2. Chen Jie can take the No. 18 bus.

() 3. The bus stop is next to the zoo.

十五、根据下列图片提示写一写“My weekend”。



ride a bike



paint a picture



read a book



fly a kite



row a boat

My weekend

The weekend is coming. I'm going to the park. In the park, I'm going to ride a bike. _____



Unit 4 I have a pen pal

A. Let's try Let's talk

一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. What are his _____ (hobby)?
2. I like drawing _____ (cartoon).
3. I also like _____ (play) sports.
4. I'm going to _____ (teacher) her English.

二、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Peter _____ doing kung fu and swimming.
A. liking B. like C. likes
- () 2. He lives on a farm, so sometimes he _____ the cows.
A. reads to B. reads C. read
- () 3. He _____ apples on a farm.
A. pick B. picking C. picks

三、给下列句子选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Mary likes playing the pipa and dancing.
- () 2. Nancy likes flying kites and drawing pictures.
- () 3. Tom likes watching TV and drawing cartoons.
- () 4. Bill likes climbing mountains and playing football.

A.



B.



C.



D.



四、按要求完成下列各题。

1. My best friend is Xu Wei. (对画线部分提问)
_____ your best friend?
2. She likes doing kung fu. (改为否定句)
She _____ doing kung fu.
3. She likes listening to music and drawing cartoons. (对画线部分提问)
_____ her hobbies?

五、复述课文。根据课文 Let's try 和 Let's talk 的内容,用合适的单词或词组补全短文。

Hi. My name's Zhang Peng. I have a pen 1. _____. His name is Peter. He's from New Zealand. He's very tall. He likes 2. _____. He 3. _____ on a farm, so sometimes he reads 4. _____ the cows. That's interesting! He likes 5. _____ and 6. _____. He also likes singing. I like singing, too. I'm going to teach 7. _____ the Chinese song "Jasmine Flower". My friend Oliver also likes doing kung fu and swimming.



A. Let's learn Do a survey

一、根据图片写出相应的单词或词组,完成对话。

- What's her hobby?
—She likes _____.
- What's his hobby?
—He likes _____ books.
- What is your hobby?
—I like _____.
- What do you like doing?
—I like _____.
- Do you like playing sports?
—Yes, I like _____.



二、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- One student _____ drawing pictures.
A. like B. likes C. liking
- I like _____ mountains.
A. climbing B. climb C. climbs
- I like Chinese. I _____ like English.
A. also B. too C. either

三、Tom 和 Peter 有哪些业余爱好呢? 请选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在相应的横线上。

- A. I like playing football, too. B. Good idea!
C. What are your hobbies? D. What about you?

- Tom: 1. _____
Peter: I like playing football and flying a kite. 2. _____
Tom: 3. _____ Let's play together.
Peter: 4. _____

四、根据表格内容,判断下列句子正误,正确的打“√”,错误的打“×”。

	Mike	Chen Jie	Sue	Peter
dancing	√	√		√
singing	√		√	
doing kung fu				√
playing the piano		√	√	

- Mike likes dancing and singing.
- Chen Jie likes dancing and doing kung fu.
- Sue likes singing and playing the piano.
- Peter likes dancing and doing kung fu.

五、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

I'm Tina. I'm from the USA. Now I live in Chongqing, China. It's a beautiful city. It's famous for hot pot. I love hot pot. It's spicy and yummy. I study in Bashu Primary School. I like drawing pictures and singing Chinese songs. Chen Jie is my good friend. She is very friendly. She likes listening to music and singing. She can sing very well. She often teaches me Chinese songs. I like her.

任务一:根据短文内容,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

- Tina is an English girl.
- Tina likes spicy and yummy hot pot very much.
- Tina likes drawing pictures and singing Chinese songs.
- Tina's good friend likes singing, too.

任务二:小调查。询问父母的爱好,并写下来。

My father likes _____.
My mother likes _____.



阶段复习训练



Listening Part



听力音频

一、听录音,判断下列图片与你所听到的内容是否相符,相符的画“😊”,不相符的画“😞”。



1. 😞



2. 😞



3. 😞



4. 😞



5. 😞

二、听录音,选择正确的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

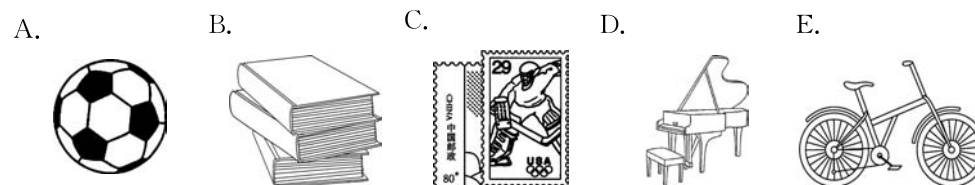
- () 1. A. I like playing the pipa and flying kites. B. She likes singing.
C. I'm going to the library.
- () 2. A. She likes going ice-skating. B. I draw pictures.
C. He likes singing and dancing.
- () 3. A. That's interesting. B. My best friend is Amy.
C. I like listening to music.

三、听短文,选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. James likes _____.
A. playing table tennis B. doing kung fu C. reading stories
- () 2. James' grandparents like _____.
A. cooking meals B. seeing films C. watching TV

- () 3. James' father likes _____.
A. reading books B. playing basketball
C. reading newspapers
- () 4. James' mother likes _____.
A. playing basketball B. drawing pictures C. singing and dancing

四、听短文,给下列小朋友选择相应的爱好,将其序号填入表格里。



Names	Tom	Coco	May	Peter	Sally
Hobbies					



Writing Part

五、选择与句中画线部分不同类的选项,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. My hobby is making puppets.
A. flying B. evening C. swimming
- () 2. Peter often reads books on the farm.
A. sings B. dances C. stories
- () 3. What are your hobbies?
A. music B. songs C. mountains
- () 4. My cousin likes playing ping-pong.
A. piano B. football C. basketball

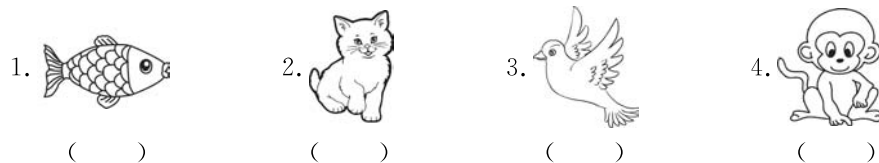
六、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. What _____ (be) your uncle's hobby?



2. —What are your _____ (hobby)?
—I like singing and _____ (dance).
3. Ten children _____ (like) drawing. One _____ (like) singing.
4. Lily likes drawing and _____ (swim).
5. Peter's grandparents _____ (live) on the farm.
6. I'm going to teach _____ (he) the Chinese song "Jasmine Flower".

七、看图,选择相应的句子,将其序号填入图下括号里。



- A. I like climbing trees.
- B. I like flying in the sky.
- C. I like catching mice.
- D. I like swimming in the water.

八、给下列问句选择合适的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. What are your hobbies?
- () 2. What are Sarah's hobbies?
- () 3. What are Oliver's hobbies?
- () 4. How many students like reading?

- A. Two students.
- B. I like watching TV and playing the pipa.
- C. She likes dancing and playing baseball.
- D. He likes singing and playing sports.

九、看图,填单词完成对话。(每空一词)



1. —What are the boy's hobbies?
—He likes climbing mountains and _____.
2. —What are the girl's hobbies?
—She likes _____ and _____.

十、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

Hello, I'm Alice. There are five people in my family. They are my parents, my brother, my sister and me. My father likes playing sports. My mother likes reading books. My brother is a player. He likes doing kung fu. Who is that beautiful girl in the garden? She's my sister. She likes playing the pipa. I like singing and dancing. I'm going to the nature park with my family this Sunday.

任务一:根据短文内容,在相应的栏中打“√”。

	reading books	playing sports	playing the pipa	doing kung fu	singing and dancing
1. father					
2. mother					
3. brother					
4. sister					
5. Alice					

任务二:根据短文内容,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

- () 6. There are five people in Alice's family.
- () 7. Alice's sister is in the garden.
- () 8. Alice's family are going to the zoo.



B. Let's try Let's talk



一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. What is he _____ (do)?
2. She likes _____ (play) the pipa.
3. Does he _____ (live) in Canberra?
4. I'm very interested in English, and I am _____ (learn) English now.

二、判断下列对话与图片是否相符,相符的打“√”,不相符的打“×”。

- () 1. —Does he like writing emails?

—Yes, he does.



- () 2. —What are they doing?

—They are playing basketball.



三、给下列问句选择合适的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. What are you doing?
- () 2. Does he like reading books?
- () 3. Can I also be her friend?
- () 4. What are they talking about?

- A. No, he doesn't.
- B. Sure.
- C. They are talking about a pen pal.
- D. I'm doing word puzzles.

四、复述课文。根据课文 Let's talk 的内容,用合适的单词或短语补全短文。

Wu Yifan is writing an 1. _____ to his new pen pal in Australia. His name is John. He's eleven years old. He doesn't 2. _____ in Sydney. He 3. _____ in Canberra. He likes 4. _____ and 5. _____. Wu Yifan's friend is also called John. He likes 6. _____ and 7. _____, too. He also wants to be John's pen pal. Aha! Two Johns!

五、阅读短文,完成下列句子。

I have a new pen pal. His name is Tony. He is twelve. He is from Canada. He lives in Beijing now. He goes to school by subway. He likes flying kites and doing kung fu. He can speak English and Chinese. His favourite subject is maths.

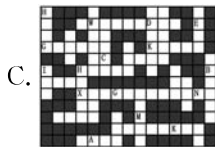
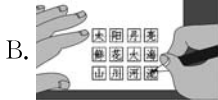
1. Tony is from _____. He lives in _____ now.
2. Tony goes to school by _____.
3. Tony likes _____ kites and _____ kung fu.
4. His favourite subject is _____.



B. Let's learn Listen, match and say

一、给下列句子选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. He studies Chinese every day.
 () 2. They go hiking every weekend.
 () 3. My friend doesn't do his homework. He does word puzzles.
 () 4. My brothers often cook Chinese food.



二、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. Come and _____ my friend.
 A. sees B. see C. watch
 () 2. She's my new pen pal. _____ is Amy.
 A. Her name B. His name C. her name
 () 3. Does Miss Green _____ word puzzles every week?
 A. doing B. does C. do
 () 4. —Does your mother cook Chinese food every day?
 —_____.
 A. Yes, she does B. Yes, she is C. No, she isn't

三、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在相应的横线上。

- A. He's a football player. B. What's his name?
 C. No, he doesn't. D. Yes, he does.

- I have a new pen pal!
 —Really? 1. _____
 —His name is Jack. 2. _____
 —Cool! Does he live in China?
 —3. _____ He lives in Canada. But he studies Chinese.
 —Does he study Chinese every day?
 —4. _____
 —Haha! Me too.

四、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| My name is Vivi. | I like cleaning our home. |
| I live in Canada. | I like planting flowers. |
| I speak French and English. | I like listening to music. |
| I have two daughters. | I like going hiking, too. |
| I am a homemaker. | My favourite season is winter. |
| I often do the dishes and cook Chinese food. | I like to go skiing with my family. |
| I love cooking. | My children are pretty good skiers. |



任务一:根据 Vivi 的名片信息,回答下列问题。

1. Does Vivi speak Chinese? _____
 2. Does Vivi often wash the dishes? _____
 3. What does "homemaker" mean in Chinese? It means "_____".
 4. Do Vivi's children like skiing? _____

任务二:仿照 Vivi 的名片,图文结合,自制你的个性化名片。别忘了和小伙伴分享哟!



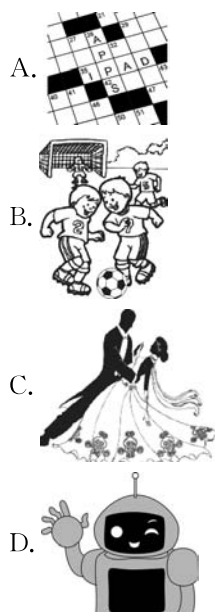
B. Read and write

一、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. There is a dancing class _____ Wednesday _____ 9 a.m.
A. at; on B. on; at C. at; at
- () 2. Do you like _____?
A. singing Chinese songs
B. sing Chinese songs
C. singing Chinese song
- () 3. Do you want to learn _____ robots?
A. after B. about C. to
- () 4. She _____ students to make robots.
A. teach B. teaching C. teaches

二、给下列对话选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. —What's your sister's hobby?
—She likes dancing with her friend.
- () 2. —Do you want to meet Robin?
—Yes, I do.
- () 3. —Do you like doing word puzzles?
Join our club!
—Great!
- () 4. —What do you often do on Sundays?
—We often play football.



三、读句子,为小朋友们选择相应的俱乐部,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. I like dancing.
- () 2. I want to be a football player.
- () 3. I have many robots. We can share!
- () 4. I like reading books.



四、请你帮助 Sarah 和 Bill 完成他们的广告牌。

Sarah 喜欢唱歌,她想邀请大家星期六下午 3 点去音乐室上音乐课。

Bill 喜欢打篮球,他想邀请大家星期日去操场加入他们的篮球俱乐部。

Shall we sing?
There is a _____.
I like _____. I need some
partners. Come to the music room!
Call Sarah: 334 5568

Let's play together!
What do you do _____?
Do you like _____?
Join our _____!
See you on the _____!
Email Bill: bill@pep.com.cn

* B. Read and write & Tips for pronunciation

一、仿照例句,标出各单词在句中的发音情况,突出重读音节。

例: I need a partner.



- I like reading.
- Where are your books?
- We must go.
- She goes by train.

二、在横线上写出三个可以替换句中画线部分同类单词或词组。

- Shall we dance? _____
- Join our science club. _____
- Do you like reading? _____
- He teaches students to make robots. _____

三、根据句意和首字母提示填单词,完成句子。

- Does he like p_____ football?
- Mike g_____ hiking every week.
- Miss Wu l_____ in Australia.
- Does Amy c_____ Chinese food?
- She d_____ word puzzles every day.

四、选词填空完成短文。

Do you like music? Do you want to sing, dance or 1. _____ (play/ plays) the pipa? Join us! Mary 2. _____ (teach/teaches) us to sing. Lucy likes 3. _____ (dances/dancing). She 4. _____ (talk/talks) about dancing. Jack 5. _____ (plays/play) the pipa. We learn from him.

五、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。



The animals are talking about their hobbies.



The cat says, "My hobby is fishing." But the monkey says, "I don't like fishing."



The elephant says, "My hobby is playing basketball." But the monkey says, "5. _____."



The bird says, "My hobby is singing." But the monkey says, "6. _____."



The rabbit says, "My hobby is cooking." But the monkey says,



The animals ask the monkey,

"7. _____." "8. _____?"

任务一:根据短文内容,判断下列句子正误,正确的写"T",错误的写"F".

- () 1. The animals are talking about their holidays.
- () 2. The elephant likes cooking.
- () 3. The bird likes singing.
- () 4. The monkey doesn't know his hobby.

任务二:结合上下文在横线上写出所缺句子。



B. Let's check Let's wrap it up

一、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

- My friend sometimes _____ (watch) TV in the morning.
- She likes _____ (fly) kites.
- Mike usually _____ (go) home at 5:00.
- My new pen pal _____ (live) in Guangzhou.

二、给下列对话选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- () 1. —Does he like playing basketball?

—No. He likes playing football.



- () 2. —Does he go to school

by bike?

—Yes, he does.



- () 3. —Does your mother like watching TV?

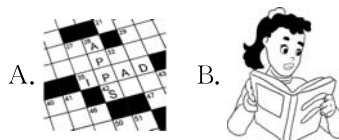
—No. She likes cooking Chinese food.



- () 4. —Does Alice love doing word puzzles

every day?

—No. She loves reading books.



C. Story time

阅读课本本单元故事,按要求完成下列任务。

任务一:根据故事内容,完成下列 Story Map。

Time (When?)	One day.	
Place (Where?)	1. _____.	
People (Who?)	2. _____	He likes 3. _____.
	4. _____ _____	He likes 5. _____. He doesn't like Zac's music.
Things (What?)	Every day the squirrels have to 6. _____ _____. Then they can 7. _____ from his forest.	
	One day Zac 8. _____.	
Result (How?)	The king was very 9. _____ and threw Zac out of the tree.	
	Zac's tail became 10. _____. He liked his new tail and so did all the other squirrels. So all squirrels' tails were 11. _____ from that day on.	

任务二:根据故事内容,回答下列问题。

1. If the story is true, why were all squirrels' tails bushy from then on?

2. What's the title(题目) of the story?



单元检测



Listening Part



听力音频

一、听录音,选择与你所听到的内容相符的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。

() 1. He likes _____.



() 2. My father likes _____.



() 3. I like _____.



二、听录音,选择正确的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

() 1. A. He likes doing kung fu and watching TV. B. He lives in China.

C. He reads books.

() 2. A. No, she can't.

B. No, she doesn't.

C. Yes, she is.

() 3. A. I don't have any cake.

B. I like hamburgers.

C. Yes, I like.

() 4. A. I like reading stories.

B. He likes singing.

C. She likes dancing.

() 5. A. No, I don't. B. I often go hiking. C. He goes hiking.

三、听录音,用数字给下列句子排序。

() Donny likes reading storybooks.

() Donny has a new pen pal.

() He loves to play sports in the garden.

() Different people in our club teach different things.

() Donny always shares the storybooks with his pen pal.

四、听短文,把短文补充完整。

My name is Tom. I'm twelve years old. I am 1. _____. I have many hobbies. I like 2. _____, 3. _____ and 4. _____. I often 5. _____ on the weekend. Sometimes I do word 6. _____ with my brother. My brother 7. _____ Chinese every day. My brother and I are good 8. _____.



Writing Part

五、判断下列句子的重音是否正确,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

() 1. They can share.

() 2. She lives in a city.



() 3. What are your hobbies?



六、选择与句中画线部分同类的两项,将其序号填入题前括号里。(有两项多余)

A. teaches B. baseball C. China D. Australia E. puzzles

F. games G. climbing H. skating I. morning J. studies

() 1. My brother likes cooking.

() 2. David goes hiking every year.

() 3. My pen pal lives in Canada.

() 4. Do you want to learn about robots?



七、根据情景描述选择正确的答案,将其序号填在横线上。

- A. art club B. sports club C. dancing club
D. science club E. cooking club

- Lily likes dancing. She wants to join the _____.
- Tom likes making robots. He can join the _____.
- Amy likes playing basketball. She can join the _____.
- John wants to cook and he would like to join the _____.
- Sally likes drawing cartoons. She can join the _____.

八、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。

- I like reading stories and _____ TV.
A. watch B. watches C. watching
- His pen pal lives _____ Canberra.
A. in B. at C. on
- He really _____ to play.
A. like B. liking C. likes

九、按要求完成下列各题。

- My hobby is making salad. (对画线部分提问)
_____ your hobby?
- She likes drawing cartoons. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ she _____ drawing cartoons?
- I like playing football. (改为同义句)
_____ is playing football.

十、任务型阅读,按要求完成下列任务。

<http://www.friend.com>

Dear friends,

I'm looking for a pen pal. I live in the UK. My home is near the Big Ben.

It's very old and big. I am twelve years old. I am tall and thin. I have many hobbies. I like singing, playing football, going ice-skating and making friends. I like robots, too. I join a football club and a science club. I often go hiking on the weekend. Sometimes I go to different museums. It's so interesting.

I'm interested in China. I'm learning Chinese. I love doing word puzzles and cooking Chinese food. Can you help me study Chinese? Can you cook Chinese food? What are your hobbies? Do you want to be my pen pal? Please send me an email at 888666@qq.com or chat with me.

Yours,
Victor

任务一:根据以上内容,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。

- This message is from Victor.
- Victor lives in London, the UK.
- Victor can speak a little Chinese.
- Victor can't make Chinese food.
- Victor wants a Canadian pen pal.

任务二:假如你想成为 Victor 的笔友,请你给他回一封邮件吧。

To	888666@qq.com
From	
Dear Victor,	

Yours,	





任务二: 1. from 2. right 3. right 4. left 5. left
6. left 7. right 8. right 9. left

单元检测

[听力材料]

- 一、1. They often go to school by subway.
2. Some kids go to school by sled. It's fast.
3. They went to school by plane because the ferry didn't work.
4. You must stop at a red light.
5. You must wear a life jacket.
- 二、1. You must pay attention to the traffic lights.
2. Sometimes I go to school by taxi.
3. He goes to Shanghai by ship.
4. They get to Beijing by train.
5. They get there by sled.
- 三、1. M: How does Wu Yifan go to school?
W: He goes to school by bus.
2. M: How does John go to Wuhan?
W: He goes by train.
3. M: How does Mike go to Canada?
W: He goes to Canada by plane.
- 四、My friend Jack is eleven. He comes from London. He usually goes to school by subway. He wants to be a basketball player. After school, he usually plays basketball. His father is a doctor. He goes to work early and gets back home late. He usually goes to work by bus. Sometimes he goes by bike. Jack and his father go to the nature park on foot every weekend.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. C
二、3 1 5 2 4
三、1. school bus 2. Wuhan train
3. Canada plane
四、1. by subway 2. plays 3. doctor
4. by bus; by bike 5. on foot
五、1. She will stop and wait.
2. Come and meet my family!
3. I have an apple.
4. You must stop at a red light.
六、1. bus, taxi 2. often, usually 3. yellow, green
4. ship, boat (1, 2, 4 小题答案不唯一)
七、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C
八、1. C 2. E 3. D 4. B 5. A
九、1. Let's go home by bus.
2. Don't let the dogs run fast.
3. How do you often go to school?
十、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
十一、1. Amy 2. by bike 3. bookstore 4. by taxi

Unit 3 My weekend plan

A. Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. do 2. draw 3. have 4. go 5. make 6. have

二、1. C 2. A 3. A

三、1. is 2. am 3. are 4. are 5. is

四、1. A: What is she going to do?

B: She is going to wash clothes.

2. A: What is he going to do?

B: He is going to swim.

五、1. on 2. go swimming 3. see a film

4. do his homework 5. have an art lesson

6. draw some pictures

A. Let's learn Make a plan

一、1. visit 2. trip 3. film 4. supermarket

二、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A

三、任务一: 1. —D 2. —B 3. —C 4. —A

任务二: 1. T 2. F 3. T

四、My name's Mike. I am going to do my homework tomorrow morning. I'm going to wash my clothes tomorrow afternoon. Tomorrow morning my father is going to read books and my mother is going to the supermarket. Tomorrow afternoon they are going to clean the rooms. Tomorrow evening we are going to watch TV together. (答案不唯一)

阶段复习训练

[听力材料]

一、1. They are going to take a trip.

2. We're going to see a film.

3. I'm going to visit my grandparents.

4. Let's go to the supermarket.

二、1. Can he go ice-skating today?

2. What are you going to do tomorrow?

3. Have a good time!

4. What is Mike going to do tomorrow?

三、1. Mike: What is Wu Yifan going to do this morning?

Chen Jie: He is going to read a book.

2. Wu Yifan: What are you going to do tonight, Sarah?

Sarah: I'm going to watch TV.

3. Sarah: What is Chen Jie going to do tomorrow?

Mike: She is going to see a film.

4. Chen Jie: What are you going to do next weekend, Mike?

Mike: I'm going to wash clothes.

四、Hello, I'm Lily. I'm going to do my homework this morning. I'm going to wash clothes this afternoon. I'm going to see a film this evening. I'm going to the supermarket with my mother tomorrow morning. I'm going to draw pictures tomorrow afternoon. I'm going to watch TV tomorrow evening.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. ☹️ 2. ☹️ 3. 😊 4. 😊





本书听力材料及参考答案

单元检测

[听力材料]

- 一、1. take a trip 2. see a film
3. go to the supermarket
4. visit my grandparents

- 二、1. When are you going?
2. Do you have comic books?
3. What are you going to buy?

- 三、1. Sarah: Hi, Mike. What are you going to do tomorrow?

Mike: I'm going to buy an English dictionary tomorrow morning. And you, Sarah?

Sarah: I'm going to buy a word book.

Mike: Great! Let's go together.

Question: What is Mike going to do tomorrow morning?

2. Boy: I'm going to see a film.

Girl: Oh. When are you going?

Boy: Next Saturday.

Girl: Can I go with you?

Boy: Yes, of course.

Question: When are the boy and the girl going to see a film?

3. John: Where are you going, Amy?

Amy: To the supermarket.

John: How are you going?

Amy: I'm going by subway.

Question: How is Amy going to the supermarket?

- 四、Tomorrow is Sunday. My friends are going to the bookstore. Oliver is going to buy a dictionary. John is going to buy a postcard. Wu Yifan is going to buy a comic book. Sarah is going to buy a word book.

- 五、Today is Saturday. Lucy is going to the bookstore this afternoon. She is going to buy a dictionary and her favourite comic books. She is going to get there by bike. She is going at 2:30. After that, she is going to the post office. She wants to buy some postcards.

[参考答案]

- 一、3 4 1 2

- 二、1. A 2. B 3. C

- 三、1. dictionary 2. next Saturday 3. by subway

- 四、1. —B 2. —A 3. —D 4. —C

- 五、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A

- 六、1. (sub)way 2. (tax)i 3. (hos)pital

4. (fer)ry 5. (travel) 6. (hel)met

- 七、1. A G 2. B H 3. C F 4. E I 5. D J

- 八、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B

- 九、1. A 2. B 3. E 4. C 5. D

- 十、

Where	Shanghai
What	visit my aunt and uncle
When	next week

- 二、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C

- 三、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B

- 四、1. homework 2. wash clothes 3. afternoon
4. evening 5. supermarket 6. draw pictures
7. tomorrow

- 五、1 3 6 2 5 4

- 六、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A

- 七、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C

- 八、1. √ 2. × 3. √ 4. ×

- 九、1. is going 2. am going to take 3. do 4. go
5. are going to see 6. draw

- 十、任务一: 1. A 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B

任务二: I'm going to go for a picnic with my parents. (答案不唯一)

B. Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. Where 2. What 3. When 4. Why

- 二、1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C

- 三、1. C 2. A 3. B

- 四、1. What is 2. isn't going 3. When are

- 五、2 3 (1) 5 (6) 4

- 六、1. next week 2. cinema 3. see a film
4. Wednesday 5. Tuesday

B. Let's learn Role-play

- 一、1. dictionary 2. comic book 3. storybook
4. postcard 5. word book

- 二、1. E 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C

- 三、1. bookstore 2. buy a word book 3. subway
4. I'm going at 3 o'clock. / At 3 o'clock.

- 四、1. F 2. T 3. F

B. Read and write

- 一、1. A 2. C 3. F 4. B 5. D 6. E

- 二、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A

- 三、1. buy 2. mooncakes 3. going 4. us

- 四、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B

B. Read and write & Tips for pronunciation

- 一、1. to (day) 2. (au)tumn 3. (fa)ther

4. (grand)ma 5. a (bout) 6. (hap)py

- 二、1. C 2. B 3. B

- 三、1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B

- 四、1. buy some mooncakes

2. going to have a big dinner

- 五、1. √ 2. × 3. × 4. √

B. Let's check Let's wrap it up

- 一、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B

- 二、略

C. Story time

任务一: 1. He's going to learn how to swim.

2. No, he can't. 3. He's afraid of water.

4. Yes, he can. 5. Yes, she is.

任务二: 1. be afraid of 2. Learn by doing

3. swimming pool 4. practise





十一、任务一:1. C 2. B

任务二:3. E 4. F 5. D

期中复习巩固练习

[听力材料]

一、1. He is going to school by bike.

2. Don't turn right.

3. She is going to school on foot.

4. I'm going to buy a dictionary in the bookstore.

5. Please turn left at the museum.

6. She is going to have a Chinese lesson.

二、1. My aunt is going to make mooncakes.

2. The post office is next to the cinema.

3. We're going to see a film about space travel.

4. I must pay attention to the traffic lights.

5. John is going to buy his favourite storybook.

三、1. Where are you going tomorrow?

2. What are you going to do?

3. What are you going to buy?

4. Where is the post office?

四、(一) W: Hello, Mikel! Where are you going this afternoon?

M: I'm going to the bookstore.

W: What are you going to buy?

M: I'm going to buy a storybook.

W: When are you going?

M: I'm going at three o'clock.

(二) W: Hello, Tom. What are you going to do next weekend?

M: I'm going to take a trip next weekend.

W: Really? Where are you going?

M: I'm going to Shanghai.

W: Wow, it's a big and beautiful city. Have a good time!

M: Thank you.

五、W: Where is the school?

M: It's on the left side of the park.

W: How about the bookstore?

M: It's behind the school.

W: Is the cinema next to the post office?

M: Yes, it is.

W: Where is the hospital?

M: It's in front of the post office.

[参考答案]

一、5 1 6 2 4 3

二、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

三、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B

四、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C

五、1. school 2. park 3. bookstore
4. post office 5. hospital

六、(一) 1. crossing 2. China

3. to night 4. at tention

(二) 1. Can I read a book at the bookstore?

2. Turn right at the post office.

七、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. C

八、1. word 2. Saturday 3. cinema

4. postcard 5. comic book

九、1. A 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C

十、1. D 2. A 3. C 4. E 5. B

十一、1. D 2. E 3. A 4. C 5. B

十二、1. pizza 2. restaurant 3. next

4. on 5. get 6. left 7. turn

8. hospital 9. delicious 10. eat

十三、1. D 2. A 3. E 4. B 5. C

十四、任务一:1 4 2 3

任务二:1. T 2. F 3. T

十五、 My weekend

The weekend is coming. I'm going to the park. In the park, I'm going to ride a bike. I'm going to paint a picture. I'm going to read a book. I'm going to fly a kite. I'm going to row a boat. I will have a good time!

Unit 4 I have a pen pal

A. Let's try Let's talk

一、1. hobbies 2. cartoons 3. playing 4. teach

二、1. C 2. A 3. C

三、1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C

四、1. Who is 2. doesn't like 3. What are

五、1. pal 2. reading stories 3. lives 4. to

5. doing kung fu 6. swimming 7. him

A. Let's learn Do a survey

一、1. doing kung fu 2. reading 3. dancing

4. singing 5. playing football

二、1. B 2. A 3. A

三、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B

四、1. √ 2. × 3. √ 4. √

五、任务一:1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T

任务二:swimming and fishing; reading and dancing (答案不唯一)

阶段复习训练

[听力材料]

一、1. She likes doing kung fu.

2. He likes reading stories.

3. He likes playing sports and his favourite is football.

4. I like singing songs.

5. They like dancing.

二、1. What are your hobbies?

2. What are Mike's hobbies?

3. Who is your best friend?

三、 James likes reading stories. His grandparents like watching TV. His father likes reading books. His mother likes singing and dancing.

四、 Hello! I'm Tom. I like riding a bike. I have





four friends. They are Coco, May, Peter and Sally. They have many different hobbies. Coco likes collecting stamps. May likes reading books. Peter likes playing football. Sally likes playing the piano.

[参考答案]

一、1. ☹️ 2. 😊 3. 😊 4. 😊 5. ☹️

二、1. A 2. C 3. B

三、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. C

四、

Names	Tom	Coco	May	Peter	Sally
Hobbies	E	C	B	A	D

五、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A

六、1. is 2. hobbies; dancing 3. like; likes
4. swimming 5. live 6. him

七、1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A

八、1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A

九、1. playing football

2. playing the pipa; listening to music

十、任务一：1. playing sports 2. reading books
3. doing kung fu 4. playing the pipa
5. singing and dancing

任务二：6. T 7. T 8. F

B. Let's try Let's talk

一、1. doing 2. playing 3. live 4. learning

二、1. ✓ 2. ×

三、1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C

四、1. email 2. live 3. lives 4. doing word puzzles
5. going hiking 6. doing word puzzles
7. going hiking

五、1. Canada; Beijing 2. subway
3. flying; doing 4. maths

B. Let's learn Listen, match and say

一、1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A

二、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A

三、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. D

四、任务一：1. No, she doesn't. 2. Yes, she does.
3. 家庭主妇 4. Yes, they do.

任务二：略

B. Read and write

一、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C

二、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B

三、1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C

四、左框：music class on Saturday at 3 p.m.; singing
右框：on Sundays; playing basketball; basketball club; playground

B. Read and write & Tips for pronunciation

一、1. I like reading.



本书听力材料及参考答案

2. Where are your books?



3. We must go.



4. She goes by train.



二、1. sing, play, draw 2. art, music, English

3. swimming, hiking, cooking

4. do kung fu, draw cartoons, play the piano
(答案不唯一)

三、1. playing 2. goes 3. lives 4. cook 5. does

四、1. play 2. teaches 3. dancing 4. talks 5. plays

五、任务一：1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T

任务二：5. I don't like playing basketball

6. I don't like singing

7. I don't like cooking

8. What is your hobby

B. Let's check Let's wrap it up

一、1. watches 2. flying 3. goes 4. lives

二、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B

C. Story time

任务一：1. In the forest 2. Zac

3. singing and dancing

4. The Monkey King 5. reading books

6. give the Monkey King gifts 7. get food

8. sang for the king 9. angry

10. bushy 11. bushy

任务二：1. Maybe all squirrels sang a song for the king. The king was angry and threw all of them out of the tree. Then their tails became bushy. (答案不唯一)

2. Zac and the Monkey King. (答案不唯一)

单元检测

[听力材料]

一、1. He likes playing football.

2. My father likes climbing mountains.

3. I like singing.

二、1. What are Peter's hobbies?

2. Does she like playing the piano?

3. What do you like?

4. What is your hobby?

5. Do you often go hiking?

三、1. Donny has a new pen pal.

2. He loves to play sports in the garden.

3. Donny likes reading storybooks.

4. Donny always shares the storybooks with his pen pal.

5. Different people in our club teach different things.

四、My name is Tom. I'm twelve years old. I am kind. I have many hobbies. I like swimming.



singing and playing sports. I often go hiking on the weekend. Sometimes I do word puzzles with my brother. My brother studies Chinese every day. My brother and I are good students.

[参考答案]

一、1. B 2. B 3. A

二、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A

三、3 1 2 5 4

四、1. kind 2. swimming 3. singing
4. playing sports 5. go hiking 6. puzzles
7. studies 8. students

五、1. T 2. F 3. T

六、1. G H 2. A J 3. C D 4. E F

七、1. C 2. D 3. B 4. E 5. A

八、1. C 2. A 3. C

九、1. What is 2. Does; like 3. My hobby

十、任务一: 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F 任务二: 略

Unit 5 What does he do?

A. Let's try Let's talk

一、1. dancer 2. football player 3. taxi driver
4. doctor 5. teacher 6. singer

二、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. C

三、1. C 2. B 3. A

四、1. E 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B

五、1. doctor 2. businessman 3. goes
4. head teacher 5. be 6. head teacher
7. businessman

A. Let's learn Listen, match and say

一、1. writer 2. postman 3. police officer
4. businessman 5. cleaner

二、1. worker 2. your 3. singing; singer
4. businesswoman

三、1. —D 2. —A 3. —B 4. —C

四、任务一:

Animals	Jobs	Abilities (What can they do?)
A cat	police officer	It can catch mice.
A pigeon	postman	It can deliver letters.
A woodpecker	doctor	It can eat the worms in the tree.

任务二: 1. It's talking about some animals' jobs.
2. It means "瓜子".
3. I know that a frog can be a guard for plants. It can eat insects. (答案不唯一)

阶段复习训练

[听力材料]

一、1. My cousin is a postman.
2. His uncle is a factory worker.
3. Mr Li is a police officer.
4. Her sister is a dancer.

5. Mr Zhang is a businessman.

二、1. W: Hey, Oliver! Do you want to be a writer?
M: Yes, I do.

2. W: Hello, Wu Yifan. What do you want to be?
M: I want to be a doctor.

3. M: Hi, Chen Jie. What do you want to be?
W: I want to be a singer.

4. W: Hello, Mike. Do you want to be a doctor?
M: No, I want to be a businessman.

三、1. What does your brother do?

2. Is your mother a doctor?

3. Do you want to be a businessman?

四、 I have a happy family. My father and mother are teachers. They like reading books. They work in a school. My sister is a doctor. She likes swimming. My brother is a police officer. He goes to work by car. He likes doing sports. We love each other.

[参考答案]

一、2 3 5 4 1

二、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B

三、1. A 2. C 3. C

四、1. teachers 2. reading books 3. school
4. doctor 5. swimming 6. police officer
7. car 8. doing sports

五、1. postman businessman
2. postwoman businesswoman
3. cleaner worker (答案不唯一)
4. dancer writer (答案不唯一)
5. artist scientist (答案不唯一)

六、1. D 2. E 3. F 4. A 5. B 6. C

七、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A

八、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. E 5. D

九、1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C

十、 Hello, I'm Tom. I'm a student. There are five people in my family. They are my father, my mother, my sister, my brother and me. My father is a businessman. My mother is a factory worker. My sister is a police officer. My brother is a postman. I love my family.

B. Let's try Let's talk

一、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B

二、1. police officer 2. by car 3. fisherman
4. works 5. by boat 6. by bike 7. works
8. stays

三、1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C

四、任务一: 1. a writer 2. by car 3. a police station
4. climbing mountains 5. a bank
6. by subway

任务二: 1. T 2. T

B. Let's learn Write and discuss

一、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. C

二、1. pilot 2. coach 3. scientist 4. fisherman



同步作业类

RP



网小状元 黄 达标卷



主编 万志勇



单元期中检测卷 (共9卷)



分类专项复习 (4卷)



标准化调考模拟试卷 (2卷含答题卡)



六年级英语 上



龍門書局

龙门品牌·学子至爱
www.longmenshuj.com

最新修订



学校

班级

考号

姓名



Unit 3 达标卷



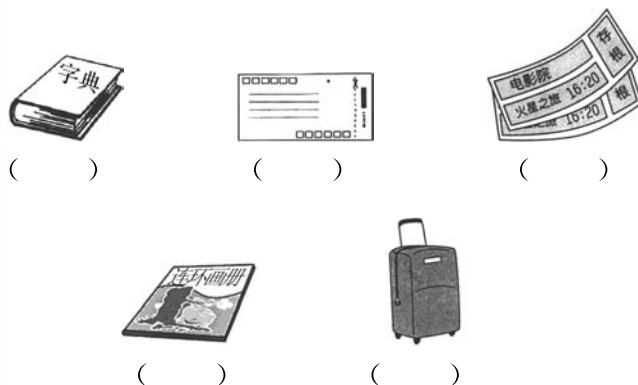
建议时间: 40 分钟 满分: 100 分

Listening Part(40 分)



听力音频

一、听录音,用数字给下列图片排序。(5 分)



二、听录音,判断下列句子与你所听到的内容是否相符,相符的打“√”,不相符的打“×”。(5 分)

- () 1. I'm going to look for some beautiful leaves.
() 2. John is going to buy his favourite word book.
() 3. We are going to draw some pictures in Renmin Park.
() 4. My family are going to get together and have a big dinner.
() 5. Amy and I are going to buy some postcards.

三、听录音,根据短文内容选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10 分)

- () 1. Mike is going to buy a _____.
A. word book B. dictionary C. comic book
() 2. Mike is going _____.
A. by bike B. on foot C. by bus
() 3. Mike is going _____.
A. next week B. tonight C. tomorrow
() 4. Sarah is going to the _____.
A. cinema B. library C. bookstore

- () 5. The film is about a _____.
A. panda B. cat C. bird

四、听录音,写出所缺单词补全对话。(10 分)

Tom: My friend Jack is going to visit me next
1. _____.
Sally: That's nice. Where are you going?
Tom: We're going to the 2. _____. We're
going to 3. _____ some animals.
Sally: Cool! I have lots of comic books about animals.
When are you going?
Tom: Next 4. _____.
Sally: Why not go on Sunday? I'm free next Sunday.
We can go 5. _____.
Tom: Good idea! Let's go together next Sunday!

五、听录音,根据短文内容选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10 分)

- () 1. I'm _____. I have _____ on Sunday.
A. Oliver; no classes B. Mike; no classes
C. Oliver; classes
() 2. My parents aren't _____ on Sunday.
A. go to work B. going to work
C. going to take a trip
() 3. We are going to _____.
A. visit the museum B. work hard
C. have a busy Sunday
() 4. What is Oliver's mother going to do?
A. She's going to buy something for the next week.
B. She's going to visit Oliver's uncle and aunt.
C. She's going to wash clothes.
() 5. What are they going to do tomorrow afternoon?
A. They are going to see animals in the zoo.
B. They are going to have a big dinner in a restaurant.
C. A & B

Writing Part(60 分)

六、在横线上写出与每组单词或短语同类的单词或短语。(5 分)

1. sun star earth _____
2. visit travel clean _____
3. dictionary word book storybook _____
4. today tonight next week _____
5. morning afternoon night _____

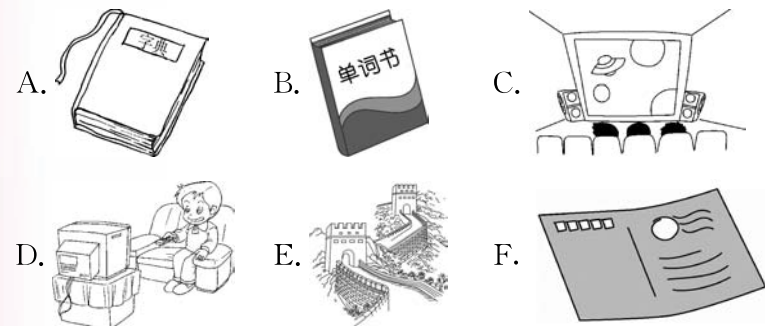
七、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10 分)

- () 1. My grandma _____ tell us a story about Chang'e.
A. will B. is C. do
() 2. Robin and I _____ going to read a poem.
A. am B. is C. are
() 3. I'm going to buy some _____.
A. Word books B. word books
C. word book
() 4. My cousin Jack is going to visit _____ next week.
A. me B. I C. my
() 5. I have lots of comic books _____ space.
A. for B. to C. about
() 6. Why _____ go on Tuesday? It's half price then.
A. don't B. not C. doesn't
() 7. I am going to _____ a trip next week.
A. take B. takes C. taking
() 8. What are you going _____ on Sunday morning?
A. to B. to do C. doing
() 9. —How is Amy going tomorrow?
—_____.
A. Beijing B. By plane
C. On the weekend

- () 10. My aunt is going to make mooncakes for _____.
A. National Day B. Children's Day
C. the Mid-Autumn Festival

八、给下列句子选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。

(6分)



- () 1. He's going to watch TV tonight.
() 2. They are going to see a film together.
() 3. I'm going to buy a dictionary in the bookstore.
() 4. We are going to the Great Wall next week.
() 5. She is going to buy a word book.
() 6. I'm going to send a postcard in the post office.

九、猜谜语,选择正确的答案,将其填在相应的横线上。

(5分)

postcard	cinema	Saturday
dictionary	word book	

1. There are lots of words in the book. _____
2. You can see a film there. _____
3. This day is between Friday and Sunday. _____
4. You can write a short message on the card and send it to your friend. _____
5. It can tell you a new word's meaning. _____

十、根据答语写出问句,补全对话。(10分)

- A: 1. _____
B: I am going to the bookstore.
A: 2. _____
B: I'm going to buy a dictionary.
A: 3. _____

B: I'm going at 4 o'clock.

A: 4. _____

B: I'm going there by bike.

A: 5. _____

B: I am going with my sister.

十一、Sarah 准备周末去看电影。读一读下面的电影信息,判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。(10分)

The film at the weekend
Name: Kung Fu Panda
Time: 9:30 p.m. Sunday, October 11th
Place: Dadi Cinema
Ticket: thirty-five yuan
Ticket office: at the gate of Dadi Cinema

- () 1. Sarah is going to see a film on December 11th.
() 2. She is going to Dadi Cinema on Sunday evening.
() 3. She can see a panda in the film.
() 4. The ticket of the film is twenty-five yuan.
() 5. She is going to buy the ticket at the gate of Dadi Cinema.

十二、阅读下面的短信,选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10分)

	8 a.m.	1 p.m.
Hi, Mike. Would you like to go to the gym?	Hi, John. The gym? Why?	Hello, Cindy! Do you want to go to the cinema with me tonight?
There is a ping-pong game in the gym.	Which film will be on, Amy?	Jane Eyre. There are some famous actresses(女演员) and actors(男演员) in the film.
Great! When will it start?	Sounds great! How much are the tickets?	OK. I will meet you at the cinema gate.
In an hour.	Fifty yuan each.	
I see. I'll go there on foot.		
I'll go there by bike. See you.		

() 1. Mike and John are _____.
A. badminton fans B. ping-pong fans
C. baseball fans

() 2. The ping-pong game will start at _____.
A. about 1 p.m. B. about 8 a.m.
C. about 9 a.m.

() 3. John will go to the gym _____.
A. on foot B. by bus C. by bike

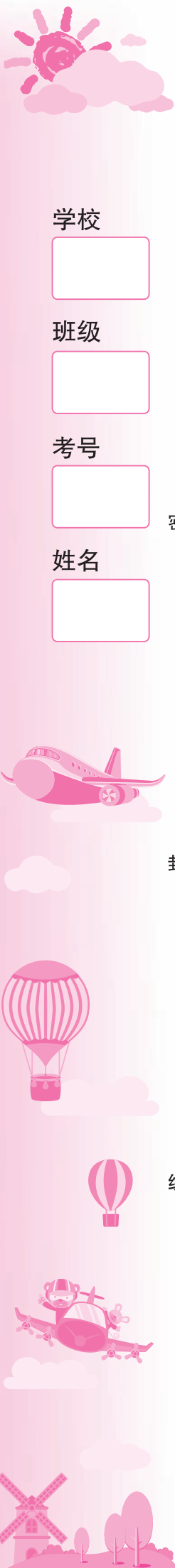
() 4. Cindy and Amy are going to _____.
A. watch TV B. see a film
C. take photos with the actresses and actors

() 5. Cindy and Amy will pay _____ for two tickets.
A. ¥200 B. ¥100 C. ¥50

十三、书面表达。(4分)

大家好,我是 Oliver。周末即将到来,你能根据下面表格中所给信息,用 be going to 句型写一写我的周末计划吗?再帮我想想周日可以做什么。

Time	this evening	Saturday			Sunday
		morning	afternoon	evening	
Activities	do homework	read books	see a film	write an email	...



学校

班级

考号

姓名

密

封

线

Recycle 1 达标卷
















建议时间:40 分钟 满分:100 分

Listening Part(40 分)



听力音频

一、听录音,选择与你所听到的内容相符的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里。(5 分)

- () 1. A.  B.  C. 
- () 2. A.  B.  C. 
- () 3. A.  B.  C. 
- () 4. A.  B.  C. 
- () 5. A.  B.  C. 

二、听录音,写出所缺单词或短语补全句子。(5 分)

1. Let's go to the zoo by _____.
2. I'm going to the _____ tomorrow evening.
3. How can I _____ the bookstore?
4. I'm going to take a _____ on foot.
5. He is going to watch TV _____.

三、听录音,根据路线顺序给以下各地点排序,将其序号填在横线上。(10 分)

- A. bookstore B. traffic lights C. school
D. hospital E. post office

1. _____ → 2. _____ → 3. _____ →



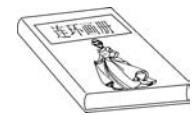
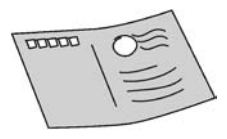



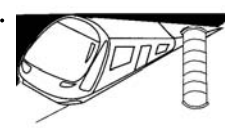

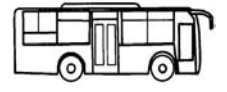
4. _____ → 5. _____ →



四、听录音,根据短文内容选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10 分)

- () 1. It's _____ today.
A. Friday B. Saturday C. Sunday
- () 2. Linda is going to the supermarket _____.
A. by subway B. by bike C. on foot
- () 3. _____ is coming.
A. Christmas B. The Mid-Autumn Festival
C. New Year's Day
- () 4. They will buy some _____ at the supermarket.
A. zongzi B. dumplings C. mooncakes
- () 5. Linda is going to see a film with her _____.
A. father B. mother C. friends

五、听录音,在对话所涉及的内容的图片下打“√”。(10 分)

1.  ()
2.  ()
3.  ()
4.  ()
5.  ()
6.  ()
7.  ()
8.  ()
9.  ()
10.  ()

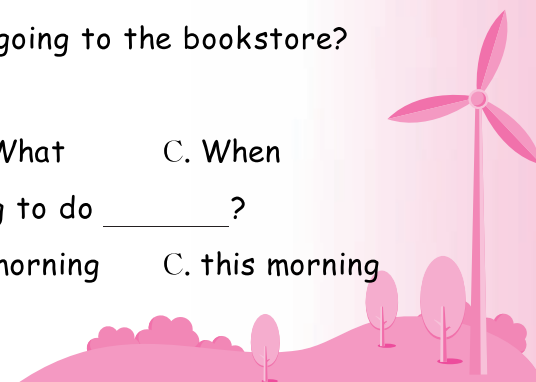
Writing Part(60 分)

六、在横线上写出与每组单词或短语同类的单词或短语。(5 分)

1. museum bookstore library _____
2. sometimes usually always _____
3. draw pictures make a snowman wash clothes _____
4. by bike by bus by taxi _____
5. zongzi dumplings noodles _____

七、选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10 分)

- () 1. This song is _____ a happy kid.
A. sing B. for C. in
- () 2. "Hush, little boy, don't say a word." "Hush" means "_____".
A. Be nice B. Be polite C. Be quiet
- () 3. You should turn left at the _____.
A. crossing B. cross C. right
- () 4. Sarah is going to _____ this Sunday.
A. taking a trip B. take a trip
C. takes a trip
- () 5. Stop! Don't go _____ a yellow light.
A. in B. for C. at
- () 6. — _____ do you go to school? — By bike.
A. What B. How C. When
- () 7. — What are you going to do tomorrow?
— I'm going to have _____ art lesson.
A. a B. an C. /
- () 8. Are they going by bus _____ on foot?
A. of B. or C. and
- () 9. — _____ are you going to the bookstore?
— This afternoon.
A. How B. What C. When
- () 10. What are you going to do _____?
A. afternoon B. morning C. this morning

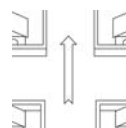


八、判断下列句子与图片是否相符,相符的打“√”,不相符的打“×”。(5分)

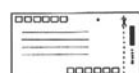
() 1. We are going to take a trip by sled.



() 2. Please turn left at the crossing.



() 3. I'm going to buy a word book.



() 4. I often come to school by bus.



() 5. I have a compass. It's useful.



九、根据图片写出相应的短语完成句子。(5分)

1. Please _____ at this crossing.



2. They are going to Canada _____.



3. We should _____ at this crossing.



4. I'm going to _____ in the cinema.



5. I have an interesting _____.



十、给下列句子选择相应的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。(5分)

() 1. Where are you going?

() 2. Thank you very much.

() 3. What are you going to buy?

() 4. How do you come to school?

() 5. Where is the post office?

- A. You are welcome.
B. I'm going to the library.
C. By bus.
D. It's next to the science museum.
E. I'm going to buy a Chinese book.

十一、按要求完成下列各题。(5分)

1. visit I'm my going grandparents to (.) (连词成句)

2. I'm going to take a trip this weekend. (就画线部分提问)

3. A: How do you go to Sanya?

(看图回答问题)

B: _____

4. A: _____

(看图补全对话)

B: Yes, there is a cinema near here.

5. A: When is Mike going to the gym?

(看图回答问题)

B: _____



十二、选择合适的单词补全对话。(8分)

cross white with red street
bookstore green don't

Kate: Are you going to the 1. _____, Mum?

Mum: Yes. Do you want to go 2. _____ me?

Kate: Yes, I want to buy a new storybook.

Mum: OK.

...

Mum: Kate, please 3. _____ run in the 4. _____.

Look! The traffic light is 5. _____ now. We

mustn't 6. _____ the street.

Kate: OK.

Mum: It is 7. _____ now. We can cross the street.

Kate: OK.

Mum: Look at these 8. _____ lines. We must cross the street here. We should look left and look right before we cross the street.

Kate: Oh, I see.

十三、读下面的广告(ad),选择正确的答案,将其序号填入题前括号里。(10分)

Welcome to Cathy's Bookstore. All kinds of books are for sale, such as storybooks, comic books, picture books, dictionaries and word books.

Book	Price
a storybook	¥28
a comic book	¥18
a picture book	¥17
a dictionary	¥29
a word book	¥12

The bookstore is open from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. every day. The assistants here are hard-working and happy to answer your questions. They will help you find what you want.

Come and see for yourself at Cathy's Bookstore!

() 1. What time can we buy books in the bookstore?

A. At 8:30. B. At 18:10. C. At 14:30.

() 2. You can't buy _____ in this bookstore.

A. word books B. picture books C. notebooks

() 3. Your brother likes reading stories, so you can buy a _____ for him.

A. dictionary B. word book C. storybook

() 4. If you have ¥43, you can buy _____.

A. a storybook and a word book

B. a storybook and a dictionary

C. a comic book and a dictionary

() 5. From the ad, we know the assistants in the bookstore are _____.

A. friendly B. hard-working

C. A & B

十四、书面表达。根据图片提示,描述 Tom 一家人的周末计划。(7分)



father



mother, Tom



brother



sister

My family's weekend plan

Hi, I'm Tom. This is my family's weekend plan. _____

- () 2. What _____ he going to buy in the shoe store?
A. are B. is C. am
- () 3. — _____ are you going to the zoo?
— I'm going tomorrow.
A. Where B. When C. What
- () 4. Turn right _____ the school and then go _____.
A. of; straight B. at; straight
C. in; straightly
- () 5. How can I _____ the post office?
A. get to B. get off C. get on

九、根据首字母提示写出下列句子画线部分的对应词或反义词。

(首字母已给出)(5分)

1. The park isn't near my school. It's f _____.
2. The zoo is in front of my school. The park is b _____ the library.
3. It isn't on the r _____. It's on the left.
4. How can we get there from h _____?
5. The traffic is heavy and slow. Don't drive too f _____.

十、给下列句子选择相应的答语,将其序号填入题前括号里。

(5分)

- () 1. It's a yellow light. A. We can go.
() 2. It's a red light. B. Please slow down and stop.
() 3. It's a green light. C. We must stop and wait.
() 4. Where is it? D. Yes, it is.
() 5. Is this your bike? E. It's near the park.

十一、根据图片顺序,用数字给下列句子排序。(5分)



- () I'm going to the cinema on foot.
() I'm going to the science museum by taxi.
() Today is Sunday. I get up at 6 o'clock.

- () I'm going to the park by bike.
() I'm going to Beijing by plane next week.

十二、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在横线上。(有两项多余)(5分)

- A. What do you do there?
B. Where are you going this Sunday?
C. How do you go there?
D. Do you have a good time?
E. Where do you go on Sundays?
F. What are you going to do?
G. Do you go there with your friends?

- A: Hello, Tom! 1. _____
B: I usually go to Beihai Park.
A: 2. _____
B: I go hiking.
A: 3. _____
B: I go there by car.
A: 4. _____
B: Yes, I go there with my friends.
A: 5. _____
B: Yes, I do.

十三、选择合适的单词将短文补充完整,每词限用一次。(10分)

going In homework read shopping
watch Sunday by take new

Hello, my name is Sarah. I am 1. _____ to have a busy weekend. On Saturday, I am going to 2. _____ a trip. I am going 3. _____ bike. On 4. _____ morning, I am going to go 5. _____. I am going to buy a 6. _____ T-shirt. In the afternoon, I am going to the library. I want to 7. _____ Harry Potter (《哈利·波特》) there. 8. _____ the evening, I am going to do my 9. _____. Then, I'm going to 10. _____ TV. That will be nice.

十四、任务型阅读。按要求完成下列各题。(10分)

Lily is asking a policeman for help.

Lily: Excuse me. Where is the bookstore, please?

Policeman: It's next to the restaurant.

Lily: Is it far from here?

Policeman: Yes.

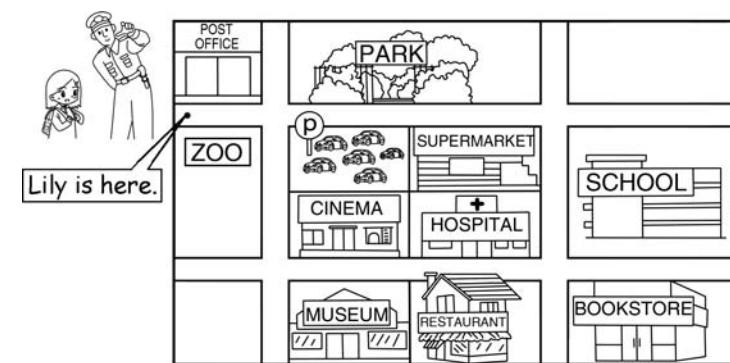
Lily: How can I get there?

Policeman: First, go straight. Turn right at the supermarket. Then go straight again for twenty minutes. The bookstore is on the left.

Lily: Thank you very much!

Policeman: You are welcome.

任务一:阅读对话,画出线路。(4分)



任务二:根据地图,填写相关信息。(6分)

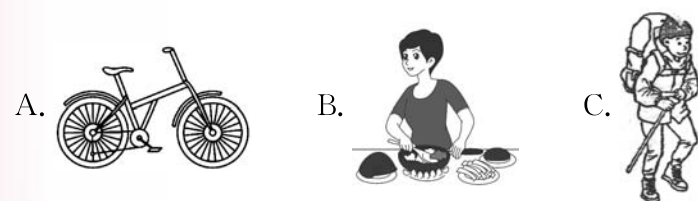
1. Lily turns left at the post office. The _____ is on her right.
2. Lily turns right at the zoo. She goes straight, and then turns left at the cinema. The _____ is on her right.

十五、书面表达。根据图片提示,写出 Lily 的周末计划。(5分)



- () 6. Amy can teach _____ English.
A. I B. my C. me
- () 7. He _____ word puzzles every day.
A. do B. is C. does
- () 8. I like _____ books. I _____ books every day.
A. read; read B. reading; reading
C. reading; read
- () 9. I'm very _____ in Australia.
A. interested B. interest C. interesting
- () 10. What do you do _____ Sundays?
A. at B. in C. on

十、给句子选择相应的图片,将其序号填入题前括号里,并完成句子。(6分)



- () 1. His mother likes _____.
- () 2. My new pen pal likes _____.
- () 3. Mike goes to school _____.

十一、选择合适的句子补全对话,将其序号填在横线上。(有一项多余)(5分)


- A. He likes drawing cartoons and listening to music.
B. What are you doing?
C. Yes, he does.
D. Where does he live?
E. Can I also be his pen pal?
F. Does he live in Shanghai?

A: Hey! 1. _____
B: I am writing a postcard to my pen pal Peter.
A: 2. _____
B: No, he doesn't. He lives in Wuhan.

A: What are his hobbies?
B: 3. _____ He also likes climbing mountains.
A: Does he climb mountains every week?
B: 4. _____
A: I also like climbing mountains. 5. _____
B: Of course.

十二、阅读两位访问生的信息卡,完成下列句子。(9分)

Name: Jerry


From: 

Hobbies: play the pipa, draw cartoons, make model planes

Favourite food: hot dogs, beef, salad

Favourite subject: science

Name: Emily

From: 

Hobbies: play baseball, read books, listen to music

Favourite food: chicken, potatoes

Favourite subject: science

1. Jerry is from _____ and Emily is from _____.
2. _____, _____ and _____ are Emily's hobbies.
3. Jerry likes to eat _____, _____ and _____.
4. Both of them like _____.

十三、任务型阅读。按要求完成下列各题。(10分)

Wu Yifan and his friends are reading the ads on the school notice board. They want to join different clubs. Which clubs will they choose?
Wu Yifan: I'll go to France, but I can't speak French.

Mike: I enjoy delicious food.
Sarah: My hobbies are listening to music and playing the piano.
Oliver: I'm interested in Chinese kung fu.
Robin: I want to join one, too! I like playing chess.

NOTICE BOARD		
A. French Club Do you know Paris (巴黎)? Can you speak French? Do you want to learn French? Join the French Club now! Call Kate: 822 3278	B. Music Club There is a music class every Wednesday. Can you play the violin, the piano or the pipa? You'll have a great time here! Call Gina: 334 5523	C. Cooking Club Are you good at cooking? Do you enjoy delicious food? Learn to cook in Room 302 every Tuesday. See you there! Tom@pep.com.cn
D. Kung Fu Club Can you do any Chinese kung fu? We have the best coach from the Shaolin Temple! Come and have fun with us! Fred@pep.com.cn	E. Volunteer Club Do you like helping others? Every Sunday, we'll visit the old people's home. We'll clean the rooms, wash clothes and read books to the old people. Call Joe: 677 2809	F. Chess Club Do you like playing chess? Do you want to be a good chess player? Come to the chess room on Friday. Mr Jones@pep.com.cn

任务一:为下列人物选择合适的俱乐部,将其序号填入相应的括号里。(5分)



任务二:判断下列句子正误,正确的写“T”,错误的写“F”。(5分)

- () 6. Wu Yifan is going to France.
() 7. Mike likes music.
() 8. Sarah likes playing the piano.
() 9. Oliver likes doing Chinese kung fu.
() 10. Robin likes playing basketball.

十四、书面表达。根据图片介绍 Amy 和她的同学们的兴趣爱好。(5分)



Amy and her friends have different hobbies. Amy likes dancing. _____

听力材料及参考答案

Unit 1 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. It's a compass.
2. They can eat some pizza in an Italian restaurant.
3. You can read books in the library.
4. Go straight and you can see the Palace Museum.
5. The museum shop is next to the bookstore.
- 二、1. You should turn right.
2. We need a compass.
3. You can buy some books at the bookstore.
4. There is a new cinema in our city.
5. You can see a big post office over there.
- 三、1. Excuse me. Is there a hospital near here?
2. Where is the library?
3. Excuse me. Can you help me?
4. How can I get to the Italian restaurant?
5. Robin has GPS. What is his new feature?
- 四、Amy: Excuse me, sir. Where is the post office? I want to send a letter.
Policeman: It's next to the bookstore.
Amy: Is it far from here?
Policeman: Yes. You can take the No. 1 bus. Get off at the cinema. Turn right at the first crossing. Go straight and turn left at the bookstore. Then you can see the post office.
Amy: Thank you, sir.
- 五、What do you want to do on Saturday and Sunday? Please come to the science museum. In the museum, you can see many interesting things. You can see beautiful stars. You can talk with the robot. You can have fun with your friends. How do you get to the museum? Well, it is on Third Street. It's next to the Happy Restaurant. It's near the Children's Hospital. It's behind the Wanda Cinema. It opens from 8: 00 to 18: 00. Welcome to the museum.

参考答案

- 一、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B
二、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. B
三、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B
四、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. A
五、1. want 2. science museum 3. interesting 4. beautiful
5. robot 6. have fun 7. get to 8. next to 9. near
10. behind
六、1. bookstore cinema post office
2. near beside behind
七、1. hospital 2. crossing 3. turn left 4. go straight
5. turn right
八、1. near 2. on 3. library 4. police station
九、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A
6. B 7. C 8. C 9. B 10. A
十、1. B; post office 2. E; cinema 3. C; Turn right
4. D; GPS 5. A; 188 bus
十一、1. E 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B
十二、3 1 5 4 2
十三、1. B 2. E 3. F 4. D 5. A
十四、任务一: 1. bookstore 2. cinema 3. hospital
4. library 5. park
任务二: 6. F 7. T 8. T 9. T 10. F
十五、A: Excuse me, how can I get to the shoe store?
B: Go straight, turn left at the second crossing, then

go straight, and turn right at the library. You can see the shoe store on your left.

A: Thank you.

B: You're welcome.

Unit 2 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. If you go to work by sled, you must drive slowly.
2. They are from my cousin in the USA.
3. You must look right before you cross the road.
4. Some children in Jiangxi, China, go to school by ferry every day.
5. I must pay attention to the traffic lights.
- 二、1. It's red. He must stop and wait.
2. I usually go to the park on foot.
3. I often go to Sanya by ship.
4. They go home by ferry.
5. Sometimes he goes to school by subway.
- 三、When you go across the road, please look at the traffic lights first. Stop and wait at a red light. Slow down and stop at a yellow light. Go at a green light. We must pay attention to the traffic lights.
- 四、1. Hello, I'm Chen Jie. I often come to school by subway.
2. Hello, I'm Robin. I often go to the park on foot.
3. Hello, I'm Mike. Sometimes I go to the science museum by bus.
4. Hello, I'm John. I sometimes go to the gym by taxi.
5. Hello, I'm Oliver. I sometimes go to school by sled.
- 五、Lucy and Lily are good friends. Lucy is from the USA. Lily is from the UK. Lucy's home is next to their school, so she goes to school on foot. But Lily's home is far from their school. She goes to school by bus. They often study and play together at school.

参考答案

- 一、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A
二、1. √ 2. × 3. √ 4. × 5. √
三、3 5 2 1 4
四、1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. E
五、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. B
六、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C
七、1. by bus 2. by subway 3. by plane 4. on foot
5. by train
八、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. B
6. B 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. A
九、1. A. √ B. × 2. A. × B. √ 3. A. × B. √
十、1. B 2. C 3. A
十一、1. D 2. C 3. A 4. E 5. B
十二、1. run on the ferry 2. put on a helmet
3. touch the door 4. let the dogs run too fast
5. stop at a red light (答案不唯一)
十三、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B
十四、Amy, Jack, Sarah, Tom and Sam are good friends. They often play together. But they go to school in different ways. Amy usually goes to school on foot. Jack goes to school in his father's car. Sarah often goes to school by subway. Tom goes to school by bus. Sam goes to school by bike.

Unit 3 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. He is going to buy his favourite comic book.
2. She is going to see a film in the cinema.
3. I'm going to take a trip with my parents next weekend.
4. I have a nice dictionary.

5. I'm going to buy a postcard for my teacher.

- 二、1. I'm going to look for some beautiful leaves.
2. John is going to buy his favourite comic book.
3. We are going to draw some pictures in Renmin Park.
4. My family are going to get together and have a big dinner.
5. Amy and I are going to read a poem.
- 三、Tomorrow is Saturday. Mike is going to the bookstore. He's going to buy a comic book. He is going to the bookstore by bike. Sarah is going to see a film. It's about a cat. She wants to go to the cinema with her friends.
- 四、Tom: My friend Jack is going to visit me next week.
Sally: That's nice. Where are you going?
Tom: We're going to the zoo. We're going to see some animals.
Sally: Cool! I have lots of comic books about animals. When are you going?
Tom: Next Saturday.
Sally: Why not go on Sunday? I'm free next Sunday. We can go together.
Tom: Good idea! Let's go together next Sunday!
- 五、My name is Oliver. Tomorrow is Sunday. I have no classes, and my parents aren't going to work. But we are going to be very busy tomorrow. Tomorrow morning, my mother is going to buy something for the next week. My father is going to visit my aunt and uncle. I'm going to play basketball with my cousin. Tomorrow afternoon, we are going to see animals in the zoo. Then we are going to have a big dinner in a restaurant. I think we are going to have a nice Sunday.

参考答案

- 一、4 5 2 1 3
二、1. √ 2. × 3. √ 4. √ 5. ×
三、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B
四、1. week 2. zoo 3. see 4. Saturday 5. together
五、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C
六、1. moon 2. wash 3. comic book 4. tomorrow
5. evening (答案不唯一)
七、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C
6. B 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C
八、1. D 2. C 3. A 4. E 5. B 6. F
九、1. word book 2. cinema 3. Saturday 4. postcard
5. dictionary
十、1. Where are you going? 2. What are you going to buy?
3. When are you going? 4. How are you going?
5. Who are you going with?
十一、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
十二、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B
十三、Hello, I'm Oliver. The weekend is coming. I'm going to do my homework this evening. I'm going to read books on Saturday morning. I'm going to see a film on Saturday afternoon. I'm going to write an email on Saturday evening. I'm going to visit my grandparents on Sunday.

Recycle 1 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. They are going to Beijing by plane.
2. Please go straight.
3. My father is going to buy a helmet.
4. We are going to the science museum next weekend.
5. She is going to buy a dictionary.
- 二、1. Let's go to the zoo by taxi.

2. I'm going to the supermarket tomorrow evening.
3. How can I get to the bookstore?
4. I'm going to take a trip on foot.
5. He is going to watch TV tonight.

三、W: Excuse me. Where is the science museum?

M: It's next to the bookstore.

W: How can I get there?

M: Turn left at the hospital. Then turn right at the post office. Go straight. Turn right at the traffic lights. You will see a school on your left. The bookstore is behind the school. Then you can find the science museum.

W: OK, I see. Thank you.

M: You're welcome.

四、It's Saturday tomorrow. Linda is going to have a busy day. In the morning, she is going to the supermarket with her mother. The supermarket is near her home, so they will get there on foot. The Mid-Autumn Festival is coming. They will buy some mooncakes for the Mid-Autumn Festival. Linda likes mooncakes very much. Then in the afternoon, she will do homework at home. In the evening, she is going to the cinema by bus. She is going to see a film with her friends. She will be happy.

五、On Saturday morning, John meets Amy at Renmin Park.

M: Hi, Amy. Where are you going?

W: Hi, John. I'm going to the bookstore.

M: What are you going to buy?

W: I'm going to buy a dictionary and some postcards.

M: Can I go with you? I'm going to buy some comic books.

W: Sure.

M: How can we get there?

W: It's a little far. Let's go by bus first. Then we get off the bus at the cinema, and we can go to the bookstore on foot. The bookstore is near the cinema.

M: OK.

参考答案

- 一、1. C 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B
二、1. taxi 2. supermarket 3. get to 4. trip 5. tonight
三、1. D 2. E 3. B 4. C 5. A
四、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. C
五、打“√”的图片: 1 3 4 7 10
六、1. cinema 2. often 3. see a film 4. by plane
5. mooncakes (答案不唯一)
七、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C
6. B 7. B 8. B 9. C 10. C
八、1. √ 2. × 3. × 4. × 5. √
九、1. turn right 2. by plane 3. turn left
4. see a film 5. comic book
十、1. B 2. A 3. E 4. C 5. D
十一、1. I'm going to visit my grandparents.
2. What are you going to do this weekend?
3. I go to Sanya by ship.
4. Is there a cinema near here?
5. He is going there at two o'clock.
十二、1. bookstore 2. with 3. don't 4. street 5. red
6. cross 7. green 8. white
十三、1. C 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. C
十四、My family's weekend plan
Hi, I'm Tom. This is my family's weekend plan. My father is going to read a book. My mother and I are going to see a film. My brother is going to watch TV. My sister is going to take a dance class. We are going to have a good time.

期中检测卷

听力材料

- 一、1. They are going to take a trip by ship.
2. We need a compass.
3. Don't touch the door on the subway.
4. Slow down and stop at a yellow light.
5. I'm going to buy a comic book.
- 二、1. Hello, I'm Jack. I'm going to see a film tonight.
2. Hello, I'm John. I'm going to take a trip next week.
3. Hello, I'm Amy. I'm going to buy a dictionary.
4. Hello, I'm Sarah. I'm going to visit my grandparents.
5. Hello, I'm Oliver. I'm going to go to the supermarket.
- 三、(A) W: Hey, Robin. Where is the post office?
M: It's near the bookstore.
W: I see. How can I get there?
M: You can take the No. 8 bus.
W: Thank you.
(B) M: Hello, Amy! What day is it tomorrow?
W: It's Saturday.
M: Great! Where are you going tomorrow?
W: I'm going to the nature park.
M: What are you going to do in the nature park?
W: I'm going to draw some pictures. What about you, Mike?
M: Haha, I'm going to look for some beautiful leaves.
- 四、M: Hi, Judy. What are you going to do this weekend?
W: I'm going to read some books in the library. Will you go with me?
M: OK! Where is the library?
W: It's next to the post office.
M: How can we get there?
W: We can go on foot. Start from our school, go straight, and then turn right.
- 五、I'm James. I live in London. I'm 11 years old. I study in the No. 1 Primary School. It's near my home, so I usually go to school on foot. I always have lots of things to do on the weekend. I'm going to have a busy weekend. On Saturday, I'm going to visit my grandparents. They live on a farm. It's far from our home, so we're going there by car. There are lots of animals on the farm. I can play with them. That'll be fun. Sunday is going to be a busy day, too! In the morning, I'm going to see a film with my friends. After lunch, I'm going to the supermarket with my mum. I'm going to have a busy and fun weekend.

参考答案

一、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. A

二、

	visit grandparents	see a film	take a trip	buy a dictionary	go to the supermarket
Jack		✓			
John			✓		
Amy				✓	
Sarah	✓				
Oliver					✓

三、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C

四、1. weekend 2. read 3. library 4. post 5. office
6. on 7. foot 8. school 9. straight 10. right

五、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F

六、1. post office 2. library 3. restaurant 4. bank

5. traffic lights
七、1. supermarket 2. turn left 3. by train 4. hospital
5. next to
八、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A
九、1. far 2. behind 3. right 4. here 5. fast
十、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. E 5. D
十一、2 4 1 3 5
十二、1. E 2. A 3. C 4. G 5. D
十三、1. going 2. take 3. by 4. Sunday 5. shopping
6. new 7. read 8. In 9. homework 10. watch
十四、任务一：



任务二：1. park 2. museum

- 十五、The weekend is coming. Lily is going to the park. She is going to read a book and draw pictures in the park. She is going there by bike.

Unit 4 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. They often cook Chinese food.
2. He likes studying Chinese.
3. We like doing word puzzles.
4. He likes reading stories.
5. He likes doing kung fu.
- 二、1. I like dancing. I want to join a dancing club.
2. I like drawing. I want to join an art club.
3. Goal! Goal! Goal! I want to join a football club.
4. I like reading. I want to join a reading club.
5. I like singing. I can join a singing club.
- 三、1. W: What are your hobbies, Tom?
M: I like singing, playing basketball and reading comic books.
Question: Tom likes singing and playing basketball. What does Tom also like?
2. M: Does your pen pal live in Sydney, Amy?
W: No, she doesn't. She lives in London.
Question: Where does Amy's pen pal live?
3. W: Does your mother like watching TV at night, Jim?
M: No, she likes watching TV in the morning.
W: So what does she do in the evening?
M: She reads newspapers in the evening.
Question: Does Jim's mother watch TV in the evening?
4. M: Who's that boy?
W: That's Peter.
M: Does he like doing kung fu?
W: No, he likes doing word puzzles. He does word puzzles every day.
Question: What's Peter's hobby?
5. M: What's your hobby, Sally?
W: I like reading stories. I want to join the reading club.
M: Great! Please come to our reading club.
Question: What club does Sally want to join?

- 四、Mike has a pen pal. His name is Sam. They write emails on the weekend. Sam likes drawing pictures. But he doesn't want to be an artist. He is going to be a football player. Sam's mother is a doctor. She likes

swimming and dancing. She usually goes to work on foot, because the hospital isn't far from her home. His father's hobby is playing the piano. He is a music teacher. He often goes to work by bus. Do you want to make friends with Sam?

五、Dear friend,

My name is Lily. I'm from the UK. I'm 12 years old. I like singing and dancing. I hope I will be a famous singer in the future. I also like reading stories. I often read stories to my brother. I'm looking for a pen pal. What are your hobbies? Do you want to be my pen pal? Write to me, please.

Yours,

Lily

参考答案

一、3 2 1 5 4

二、1. ✓ 2. × 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ×

三、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B

四、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F

五、1. Lily 2. the UK 3. 12 4. singer
5. singing, dancing and reading stories

六、1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B

七、1. likes 2. Does 3. drinking 4. read 5. teaches

八、1. four 2. riding a bike 3. reading books
4. playing football 5. flying a kite

九、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B
6. C 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. C

十、1. B; cooking 2. C; going hiking 3. A; by bike

十一、1. B 2. F 3. A 4. C 5. E

十二、1. the UK; Australia
2. Playing baseball; reading books; listening to music
3. hot dogs; beef; salad 4. science

十三、任务一：1. A 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. F

任务二：6. T 7. F 8. T 9. T 10. F

十四、Amy and her friends have different hobbies. Amy likes dancing. Jim likes singing. Tim likes reading books. Chen Jie likes playing the pipa. Tom likes drawing pictures. Jack likes playing football.

Unit 5 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. secretary
2. He works on a rescue plane.
3. He works very hard and stays healthy.
4. My father is a writer.
- 二、1. My sister is a secretary. She types very quickly.
2. My father teaches Chinese. He is a Chinese teacher.
3. My grandpa is a scientist.
4. Her mother is a factory worker.
5. His father is a coach.
6. His brother is a businessman.
- 三、1. Is your father a postman?
2. What does your sister do?
3. Where does your father work?
4. How does she go to work?
5. What does Mary have?
- 四、Look! She's my best friend Alice. She's a student. Her mother is a worker. Her father is a postman. They go to work by bus every day. Her brother Jim is a singer. He goes to work by bike. Her sister Ann is a nurse. She goes to work by bike, too. What is Alice going to do in the afternoon? Oh, she is going to buy an English book with me. Oh, she's coming.
- 五、Hi, I'm Lucy. I have a happy family. My grandpa is a

cleaner. He likes reading newspapers. My grandma is a writer. She likes reading stories. My father is a taxi driver. He likes playing basketball. My mother is a dancer. She likes watching TV. My brother is a football player. He works in a football club. He likes doing kung fu. My sister is a singer. She sings very well. I am a student. I love my family.

参考答案

一、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A

二、1. ✓ 2. × 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✓ 6. ×

三、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A

四、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T

五、3 1 2 6 4 5

六、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B

七、1. teacher 2. cleaner 3. singer 4. dancer

5. writer 6. police officer 7. reporter 8. pilot

八、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. C
6. B 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. A

九、1. Who 2. How 3. What does 4. Where does
5. fisherman

十、1. C 2. F 3. A 4. E 5. B

十一、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. C

十二、任务一：1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

任务二：6. Cindy 7. Alice 8. Tony 9. Tim 10. James

十三、

Hobbies and jobs

Hello, I'm Sarah. This is my father. He's 38 years old. He likes helping people. He is a firefighter. This is my mother. She's 36 years old. She likes teaching children. She is an English teacher. I'm 12 years old. I like writing stories. I want to be a writer in the future.

Unit 6 达标卷

听力材料

- 一、1. They are happy. 2. He is very angry.
3. I am afraid. 4. She is sad. 5. He is worried.
- 二、1. Sarah is angry. The cat is afraid.
2. The cat is ill. Sarah is sad. 3. They are happy.
4. Sarah and the cat are worried.
5. They eat yummy food. They are happy.
- 三、1. If he feels ill, what should he do?
2. They feel hungry. What will they do?
3. What's wrong?
4. It's too cold. What should I do?
5. What's this cartoon about?
- 四、1. M: Hi, Sarah. How do you feel?
W: I'm very happy because I'm going to have a party.
2. W: Hello, Mike. What's wrong?
M: I'm angry.
W: You should count to ten and take a deep breath.
3. M: Good morning, Miss White. How are you feeling today?
W: I'm excited. My students win the English match.
M: Wow! Congratulations!
4. W: Hello, John. What's wrong?
M: I'm sad. It's raining outside. I can't play football.
W: You can watch TV at home.

五、Dear Amy,

I'm sorry I can't go to the museum with you tomorrow. I'm not feeling well today. Maybe I'm ill. I have to stay in bed now. My mother will take me to the hospital later. Hope you will have a good time in the museum.

Love,

Sarah



同步作业类

冲刺名校必备

黄冈小状元



练重点

拓展·培优



主 编 万志勇

六年级英语上 RP



龍門書局

龙门品牌·学子至爱
www.longmenshujia.com



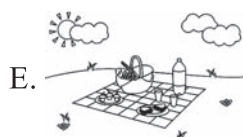
Unit 3 My weekend plan

Part A Let's try Let's talk



基础重点练

一、给下列句子选择相应的图片。



- () 1. I am going to go for a picnic.
 () 2. We are going to make a snowman.
 () 3. Linda is going to go ice-skating.
 () 4. My mother is going to wash clothes.
 () 5. Lily is going to do her homework.

二、选择正确的答案。

- () 1. —_____ are you going to do tomorrow?
 —I'm going to have _____ art lesson.
 A. What; a B. Where; an
 C. What; an
- () 2. —Where _____?
 —She is going to the cinema.
 A. she is going
 B. is she going
 C. she goes
- () 3. —_____ is she going to make a snowman?
 —Tomorrow.
 A. What B. When C. Where

() 4. —What _____ you going to do
 _____ this evening?

—I _____ going to draw a picture.

- A. is; in; am
 B. are; /; am
 C. are; on; am

() 5. (多选题)—What is he going to do
 _____?

—He is going to make a puppet.

- A. tomorrow
 B. this afternoon
 C. now



能力重点练

三、选择合适的句子补全对话。(有一项多余)

Amy: Good morning, Sarah.

Sarah: 1. _____

Amy: 2. _____

Sarah: I am going to have a music class.

Amy: What are you going to do in your music class?

Sarah: 3. _____

Amy: Sounds great!

Sarah: 4. _____

Amy: I am going to have a picnic with my family.

Sarah: 5. _____

Amy: You too.

A. We are going to sing some songs.

B. Good morning, Amy.

C. Have a good time!

D. What are you going to do this weekend?

E. What about you?

F. Sounds great!



你真棒



有进步



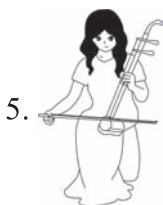
加油哟

Part A Let's learn Make a plan



基础重点练

一、看图，写动词短语。



二、用所给词的适当形式填空。

- I think I am going to _____ (be) a teacher in 10 years.
- She will _____ (go) to school on foot.
- Linda and Lucy _____ (be) going to have a dancing class this afternoon.
- They are going to _____ (do) their homework.
- Lily is going to _____ (draw) a picture for her grandpa.



能力重点练

三、根据表格内容，回答问题。

when who	this morning	this afternoon	this evening
Mike	do his homework	play football	read books
father	plant a tree	repair the car	read books
mother	plant a tree	wash clothes	read books
friends (Tim & Jim)	read books	play football	do their homework

- What is Mike going to do this morning?
_____.
- What are Mike's parents going to do this morning?
_____.
- Are Mike and his friends going to play football together this afternoon?
_____.
- Do Mike's family like reading books?
_____.

四、演讲与写作。

请根据实际情况规划一下你和你家人的周末，并写下来与朋友分享。不少于 5 句话。

Hello, I am _____. The weekend is coming.



你真棒



有进步



加油哟



Part B Let's try Let's talk



基础重点练

一、单项选择。

- () 1. —Where are you _____?
—I'm going to _____.
A. going; see a film
B. going; the cinema
C. going to go; cinema
- () 2. —Why not _____ to the cinema on Tuesday? It's half price then.
—Good idea!
A. go B. going C. goes
- () 3. —_____ are you going to the bookstore?
—We're going to _____ tomorrow.
A. When; the bookstore
B. When; buy some books
C. What; the bookstore

二、按要求完成下列各题。

1. I am going to take a trip this summer. (对画线部分提问)

2. They are going to play basketball in the gym.
(对画线部分提问)

3. She is going to visit her grandparents next week. (对画线部分提问)

4. Amy is going to see a film tonight.
(对画线部分提问)

5. What are you going to do tomorrow?
(根据实际情况回答问题)



能力重点练

三、用数字 1~5 给下列句子排序, 使它们成为一段通顺的话。

- () And we are going to have a picnic together this afternoon.
- () Then we are going to have a big dinner this evening.
- () Today is Sunday. It's a sunny day.
- () My family are going to visit my aunt this morning.
- () It will be a nice day.

四、阅读短文, 判断下列句子正(T) 误(F)。

Hello, I'm Jack. I live in Chongqing. My cousin is going to visit me from Beijing next Sunday. Then we are going to visit Chongqing Museum in the morning. There we can know the history of the hot pot. In the afternoon, we can watch a play in the Great Theatre. And in the evening, we are going to visit the Yangtze River. The Yangtze River in Chongqing is a must-see for most tourists.

- () 1. Jack's cousin will come to Chongqing.
- () 2. In the afternoon, they are going to visit Chongqing Museum.
- () 3. They will know the history of the hot pot from Chongqing Museum.
- () 4. They will watch a play in the afternoon.
- () 5. The Yangtze River in Chongqing is a must-see for most tourists.



你真棒



有进步



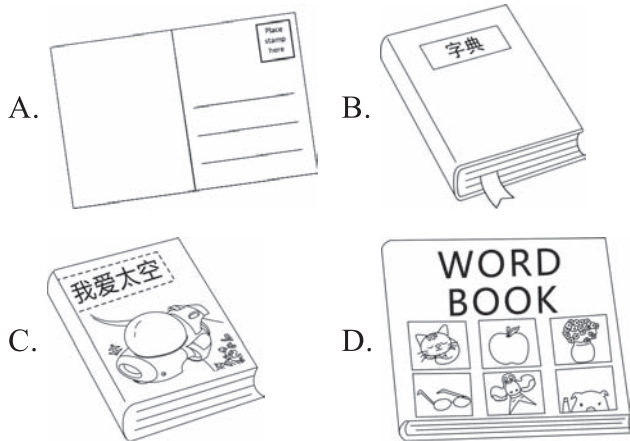
加油哟

Part B Let's learn Role-play



基础重点练

一、给下列句子选择相应的图片，并补全句子。



- () 1. I am going to the post office and buy a _____.
- () 2. John likes the _____ about space.
- () 3. A _____ is very useful. We can look up some unknown words.
- () 4. Wow! There are so many words and pictures in this _____.

二、情景选择。

- () 1. (多选题) 如果你是商场售货员，你应该对顾客说：
A. What can I do for you?
B. Can I help you?
C. Nice to meet you.
- () 2. 你询问你的朋友将去超市买什么，你应该说：
A. What do you buy?
B. What are you going to buy in the supermarket?
C. Where do you want to go?

() 3. (多选题) 你给朋友提建议，你应该说：

- A. Why not go on Sunday?
B. Let's go there on Sunday.
C. You have to go on Sunday.

() 4. 一名一年级的小学生问你要想学好英语应该买什么书，你应该说：

- A. You can buy a postcard.
B. You can buy a word book.
C. You can buy a comic book.



能力重点练

三、选择合适的句子补全对话。(有一项多余)

Seller: Can I help you?

Jack: 1. _____ I want to buy a word book.

Seller: 2. _____ Word books are there.

Jack: Thank you.

Seller: 3. _____

Jack: I want to buy one for my sister. She is 5 years old.

Seller: Oh! 4. _____ There are many colourful pictures in it.

Jack: Cool. Thank you very much.

Seller: 5. _____

A. You're welcome.

B. Yes, please.

C. You can choose this one.

D. What kind of word books do you need?

E. This way, please.

F. Wow! So many books here!



你真棒



有进步



加油哟



Part B Read and write- Let's wrap it up



基础重点练

一、选出每组中不同类的一项。

- () 1. A. buy B. theatre C. see
() 2. A. market B. museum C. comic
() 3. A. today B. together C. tonight
() 4. A. send B. dinner C. make
() 5. A. spring B. autumn C. season

二、选择正确的答案。

- () 1. —Can I help you?
—_____.
A. Yes, please
B. No, I don't need
C. I don't want to buy anything
- () 2. —I have _____ comic books.
—Cool!
A. lots of B. a lot C. a lots of
- () 3. —We are going to _____.
—They will _____ delicious!
A. make a mooncake; are
B. make mooncakes; are
C. make mooncakes; be
- () 4. (多选题)—What are you going to do next Dragon Boat Festival?
—We are going to _____.
A. join in the dragon boat competition
B. eat *zongzi*
C. tell a story about Qu Yuan

- () 5. —When are you _____ Beijing?
—I am _____ Beijing tomorrow.
A. going to go to; going to go
B. going to; going to
C. going to go; going to

三、给下列句子选择正确的答语。

- () 1. What are you going to do tonight?
() 2. When are you going to Shanghai?
() 3. How can you get there?
() 4. Where are they going?
() 5. What are you going to eat for dinner today?

- A. We can get there by plane.
B. Next Saturday.
C. I am going to eat fish.
D. We are going to play the flute together.
E. They are going to the zoo.

四、根据表格内容，补全对话。

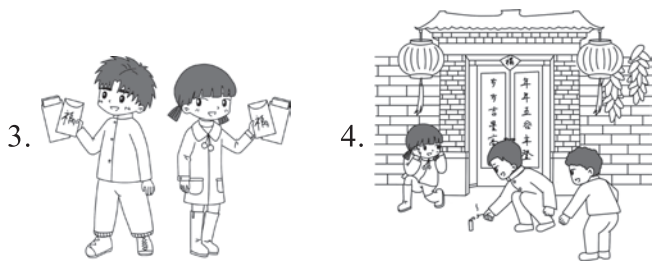
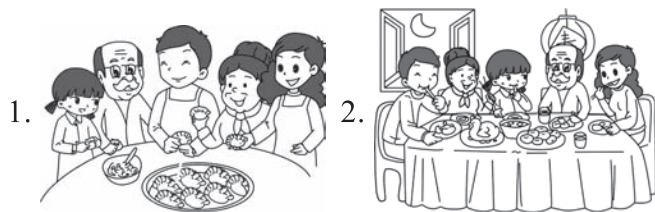
Who	What	When
Tom's parents	plant flowers in the garden	this evening
Lily's brother	send a postcard to his pen pal	tomorrow
Linda's family	have a big dinner	on Sunday

1. —What are Tom's parents going to do this evening?
—_____
2. —What is Lily's brother going to do tomorrow?
—_____
3. —_____?
—They are going to have a big dinner on Sunday.



能力重点练

五、看图，补全短文。



The Spring Festival is coming. My family are going to get together and 1. _____. We are going to 2. _____. My grandpa is going to tell us a story about Monster Nian. And we children are going to 3. _____. There is some money in them. We can buy something we need with the money. And we are going to 4. _____. It's fun, but it's dangerous, so we must be careful (小心的). In the evening, we will 5. _____ together.

六、完形填空。

The Dragon Boat Festival is 1 in China. It is usually in June. And usually we have a 2. What are my family going to 3 next Dragon Boat Festival? Listen to me. We will 4 zongzi made of glutinous (黏的) 5 and one kind of 6. And we are going

to 7 it with sugar. It will be delicious. And usually there is a dragon boat race on the 8 near my home. We are all going to gather there and 9 it. Do you want 10 join us?

- () 1. A. good B. popular C. big
() 2. A. look B. boat C. holiday
() 3. A. do B. buy C. drink
() 4. A. eat B. make C. do
() 5. A. rice B. powder C. beans
() 6. A. trees B. grass C. leaves
() 7. A. eat B. drink C. like
() 8. A. hill B. street C. lake
() 9. A. buy B. watch C. look
() 10. A. to B. and C. or

七、演讲与写作。

1. 请根据自己的实际情况填写表格。

My Weekend Plan

When	What
Saturday morning	
Saturday afternoon	
Saturday evening	
Sunday morning	
Sunday afternoon	
Sunday evening	

2. 将你的计划介绍给你的朋友，并写下来。

Hello, I am _____



你真棒



有进步



加油哟



Unit 3 单元提升



Listening



听力音频

一、听录音，选出你所听到的句子中含有的内容。

- () 1. A. lesson B. taxi C. ferry
 () 2. A. postcard B. book C. left
 () 3. A. crossing B. turning C. visit
 () 4. A. space B. travel C. moon
 () 5. A. street B. evening C. tonight

二、听录音，用数字1~6给下列图片排序。



()



()



()



()



()



()

三、听录音，选择正确的答语。

- () 1. A. We can go now.
 B. Good idea!
 C. I like this book.

- () 2. A. Usually I have a music class on Mondays.
 B. I am going to have a music class.
 C. I am doing my homework.
 () 3. A. He is going to buy some food.
 B. He is going to fly a kite.
 C. He is going to see a film.
 () 4. A. Yes. I am going to the zoo.
 B. Let's go together.
 C. This Sunday.
 () 5. A. They are happy.
 B. They like reading.
 C. They are going to the cinema.

四、听录音，将人物、事件与时间连线。

1. Amy



a. this morning

2. Mike



b. this afternoon

3. Sarah



c. tonight

4. John



d. next week

5. Chen Jie



e. next summer

五、听短文，选择正确的答案。

- () 1. What day is it today?
 A. Sunday.
 B. May 1st.
 C. It's a nice day.
 () 2. What is Mike going to do in the morning?
 A. Have a Chinese class and play the guitar.
 B. He is writing.
 C. He will have a picnic.

() 3. Is Mike going to the bookstore with his friends?

- A. No, he isn't.
B. Yes, he is.
C. Yes, he does.

() 4. How long does Mike read books every day?

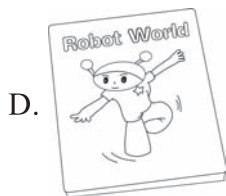
- A. He likes reading very much.
B. For 1 hour.
C. For 2 hours.

() 5. Is it going to be a busy day?

- A. No, it doesn't.
B. No, it isn't.
C. Yes, it is.

Reading and Writing

六、给下列句子选择相应的图片，并补全句子。



() 1. There's no food at home. My mother is going to _____.

() 2. After taking a bath, I am going to _____.

() 3. Wow! It's snowy. Later, my friends are going to _____.

() 4. My best friend's birthday is coming.

I am going to _____ in the bookstore for him.

() 5. Homework first! Then, I am going to _____.

七、选词填空。

is	are	am	going	goes
the	/	a	an	go

1. My friends _____ going to have a picnic.
2. Usually Linda _____ to school by bike.
3. Chen Jie is going to play _____ *erhu* on Amy's birthday.
4. Tom likes playing _____ football very much.
5. We have _____ art lesson on Mondays.
6. Where are you _____?
7. When does she _____ swimming?
8. I _____ a student.
9. He _____ laughing.
10. This is _____ good dictionary.

八、按要求完成下列各题。

1. They are going to have a school trip in June.
(改为同义句)

They _____ have a school trip in June.

2. She does her homework after school.
(改为一般疑问句)

3. We are going to have a show next week.
(对画线部分提问)

4. buy Are a you postcard going to(?)
(连词成句)

5. He is going to read a book this evening.
(对画线部分提问)



九、将下列句子排成一段通顺的对话。

- A. Today is my mother's birthday. I am going to buy some flowers for her.
 B. Good idea! Thank you!
 C. Hi, Jack. Where are you going?
 D. I am going to the flower shop. Do you know where it is?
 E. Yes. It's over there. What are you going to do in the flower shop?
 F. Oh, no! Is there a cake shop? I am going to buy a birthday cake for her.
 G. Oh. But it's 5:15. It is closed.
 H. Yes! It's behind the flower shop. But you can make one for her. You have enough time.

_____→_____→_____→_____→
 _____→_____→_____→_____

十、阅读短文，回答问题。

Hello, I am Wu Yifan. Sunday is our Family Day. We have a lot of things to do. In the morning, my mother is going to wash clothes. My father is going to clean the garden. I am going to feed my pets. In the afternoon, we are going to visit my grandparents. It is not far. We can walk there. And we are going to have dinner together in the evening.

1. When is Wu Yifan's Family Day?

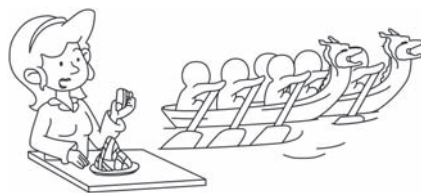
2. What is Wu Yifan's mother going to do in the morning?

3. What is Wu Yifan going to do in the morning?

4. How are Wu Yifan and his parents going to visit his grandparents?

5. Are they going to have dinner together?

十一、演讲与写作。



中国传统节日是中华民族灿烂文化的缩影。请你选择自己最喜欢的传统节日，通过电子邮件的形式介绍给你的外国朋友，并描述你和家人在节日里将做什么。

Dear _____,

Yours,



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

拓展提升训练 (一)



重点巩固

一、根据句意和首字母提示填单词，完成句子。

1. My friend and I like reading. We often buy some books at the b_____.
2. My family usually go to the c_____ on Tuesdays, because it's half price then.
3. Oh, my God! It's a c_____ here. I don't know which road I should choose.
4. Stop and wait, Amy! It's the r_____ l_____ now.
5. When we cross the road in Hong Kong, we must l_____ r_____ first. When we cross the road in Beijing, we must l_____ l_____ first.
6. This Sunday, my parents and I are going to v_____ my grandparents.
7. My dog is ill. I must take it to the pet h_____.
8. When I travel, I usually buy some p_____ and send them to my friends.

二、用正确的单词填空，补全对话。

1. —_____ is the supermarket?
—It's near the hospital.
2. —_____ can we get there?
—We can take a bus.
3. —Look! It's the yellow light now.
—Let's _____ and _____.

4. —_____ are you going to have an art class?
—Tomorrow.

三、情景选择。

- () 1. 当你想问科学博物馆在哪里时，你应该说：
A. When do you go to the museum?
B. Where is the science museum?
C. Is this the science museum?
- () 2. 当你不知道怎么去电影院时，你应该问：
A. How can I get to the cinema?
B. It is next to the supermarket.
C. I don't know where the cinema is.
- () 3. 当你想提醒别人别疯跑时，你应该说：
A. Please run fast.
B. Don't run so fast.
C. You must stop.
- () 4. 当你想询问好朋友他周末的计划时，你应该说：
A. When will you have a trip?
B. What are you going to do this weekend?
C. Where are you going?
- () 5. 当你想告诉你的朋友今年寒假你将去旅行时，你应该说：
A. I will have some lessons.
B. I am going to take a trip this winter vacation.
C. You will take a trip this winter vacation.



难点突破

四、选择正确的答案。

- () 1. (多选题) —Excuse me, is there a pet hospital near here?
—_____.
A. Yes, there is
B. No, there isn't
C. Yes, it is
- () 2. —_____ is your school?
—It's behind the park.
A. Where
B. When
C. What
- () 3. —How can we _____ there?
—Turn left at the cinema.
A. get
B. get to
C. gets
- () 4. My home is near my school, so I go to school _____ foot every day.
A. by B. on C. at
- () 5. Amy's home is far from mine. We often _____ a bus to visit each other.
A. on B. by C. take
- () 6. —How do you go to school?
—I usually _____ my bike. Sometimes I go _____ bus.
A. on; by B. ride; get on
C. ride; by
- () 7. (多选题) —What are you going to do tomorrow?
—_____.
A. I am going to visit my friends
B. I am going to do my homework
C. You are going to have classes

五、选出句中错误的一项,并在横线上改正。

- () 1. Can you playing football with me? _____
A B C
- () 2. There is many postcards here. _____
A B C
- () 3. Where are you going to? _____
A B C
- () 4. Why not to go now? _____
A B C
- () 5. There are lot of things to do. _____
A B C

六、按要求完成下列各题。

1. The cinema is behind the school.

(对画线部分提问)

2. I usually go to school by car.

(对画线部分提问)

3. Amy and Tom go to the park on foot.

(改为同义句)

4. What a beautiful flower!

(改为以 how 引导的感叹句)

5. My family go to the park by bus.

(改为同义句)

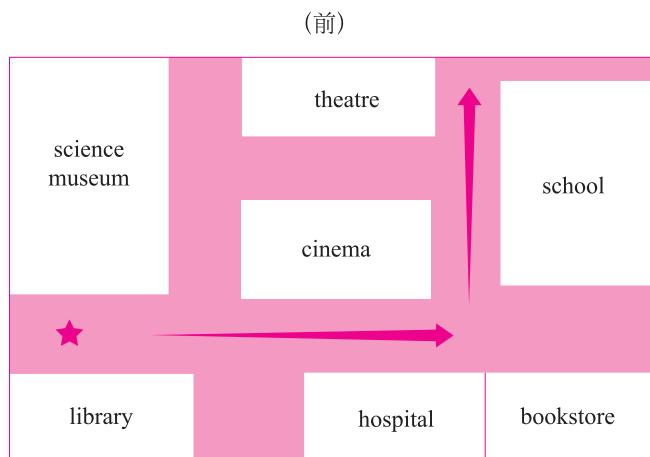
6. Mike is going to see a film tonight.

(改为一般疑问句)



拓展创新

七、看图，判断下列句子正 (T) 误 (F)。



- () 1. We can see a post office on the map.
- () 2. After school, I can go to the bookstore to read books. The bookstore is not far from my school.
- () 3. The hospital is next to the library.
- () 4. The science museum is on the left of the cinema. The theatre is in front of the cinema.
- () 5. I am at the gate of the library. I want to watch a show. I can go straight, and turn left at the second turning. Then go straight and I can see the theatre on my left.

八、完形填空。

There are 3 members in my family, my dad, my mum and me. My father is a doctor. He often works at night. He 1 to work because the hospital is 2 my home. My mum is a nurse. She works 3. She goes to work 4 car. My school is far. I go to school by bus. Every

day it 5 me one hour on the way. Next month, we 6 live near my school. My mum and dad think it's 7 for me. I can have more time to sleep and study. 8 they will spend more time on their way. I know that's 9. I have a 10 family.

- () 1. A. walk B. walks C. foot
- () 2. A. near B. next C. between
- () 3. A. hard B. hardly C. easily
- () 4. A. by B. take C. in
- () 5. A. has B. have C. takes
- () 6. A. will B. am C. is
- () 7. A. good B. bad C. easy
- () 8. A. Then B. And C. But
- () 9. A. love B. nice C. lucky
- () 10. A. warm B. big C. small

九、演讲与写作。

1. Make a one-day trip plan.

When	Where to go	Why go there	How to go
Morning			
Afternoon			
Evening			

2. 介绍你的出行计划，并写下来。

I am going to _____



你真棒



有进步



加油哟



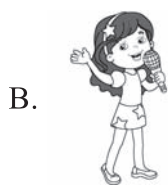
Unit 4 I have a pen pal

Part A Let's try Let's talk



基础重点练

一、给下列句子选择相应的图片。



- () 1. Lily likes singing.
 () 2. Honghong likes playing the *pipa*.
 () 3. My uncle likes watching TV.
 () 4. My friend likes listening to music.
 () 5. He likes reading English.

二、选择合适的单词补全句子。

1. What are _____ (Peter's/Peter) hobbies?
 2. He _____ (live/lives) in a small city.
 3. My sister likes _____ (sing/singing).
 4. I am going to _____ (teach/teaching) my friend a Chinese song.
 5. Mike _____ (likes/like) doing kung fu and _____ (swim/swimming).
 6. Bill is ill. He wants to _____ (see/sees) a doctor in the morning.

7. Look! I am _____ (washes/washing) the dishes.



能力重点练

三、情景选择。(多选题)

- () 1. 当你想了解 Mike 的笔友的信息时, 你可以这样问:
 A. What are your pen pal's hobbies, Mike?
 B. Who is your pen pal, Mike?
 C. Where is your pen pal from, Mike?
 () 2. 当你的朋友提出好建议时, 你可以说:
 A. Good idea!
 B. I agree with her.
 C. Sounds great.
 () 3. 当你想介绍中国文化给你的朋友时, 你可以这样做:
 A. You can write Chinese characters.
 B. You can sing Chinese songs.
 C. You can show some Chinese food.

四、给下列句子选择正确的答语。

- A. That sounds interesting!
 B. He likes reading books and listening to music.
 C. His name is Mike.
 D. Me too!
 E. Good idea!

- () 1. I like reading comic books.
 () 2. Who is your pen pal?
 () 3. Why not tell him an interesting Chinese story?
 () 4. She often dances with her lovely pet.
 () 5. What are his hobbies?



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

Part A Let's learn Do a survey



基础重点练

一、写出下列动词的 -ing 形式。

1. do — _____
2. draw — _____
3. sing — _____
4. play — _____
5. dance — _____
6. make — _____
7. hike — _____
8. take — _____
9. swim — _____
10. shop — _____
11. run — _____
12. plan — _____

二、选择正确的答案。

- () 1. Linda likes _____, but this afternoon she is going to _____.
A. swimming; dance
B. swimming; to dance
C. to swim; dancing
- () 2. In our group, five members _____ dancing, and only one _____ singing.
A. like; likes
B. likes; likes
C. likes; like
- () 3. (多选题) —What are her hobbies?
—_____.
A. She likes reading and drawing
B. He likes playing football
C. Making cards and visiting other countries
- () 4. —What are _____ hobbies?
—I like playing _____ *pipa*. And I like playing _____ football, too.
A. your; the; /
B. her; the; /
C. your; /; the



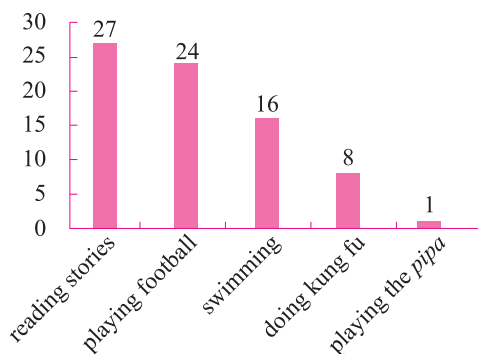
能力重点练

三、用所给动词的适当形式填空。

I'm John. I am an English boy. Now I study in Beijing, the capital of China. I make many friends here. Sue is a girl. She likes 1. _____ (read) books and 2. _____ (draw) cartoons. Martin is a boy. He likes 3. _____ (climb) mountains and 4. _____ (listen) to music. Zhang Peng is my friend too. He likes 5. _____ (do) kung fu and 6. _____ (sing). And he will 7. _____ (teach) me some Chinese songs. Now I am 8. _____ (plan) to hold a party on my birthday. And we can meet each other and play together.

四、演讲与写作。

以下条形统计图是对红星小学六(2)班40名同学的兴趣爱好进行统计的结果(有的同学有2~3种爱好)。请你根据此结果,写一份关于班级同学兴趣爱好的书面调查报告。不少于5句话。



Hello, everyone. I am _____. Today I will give a report. There are _____ students in Class 2, Grade 6. _____



你真棒



有进步



加油哟



Part B Let's try Let's talk



基础重点练

一、选择正确的答案。

- () 1. (多选题) Hi, I am Leo. Let's _____ friends.
A. be B. make C. like
- () 2. I am good _____ swimming.
A. in B. at C. for
- () 3. Mike is interested _____ the history of China.
A. at B. in C. on
- () 4. Can I _____ your friend?
A. am B. is C. be
- () 5. _____ your parents work in the city?
A. Are B. Do C. Does
- () 6. _____ Mike like reading books?
A. Does B. Is C. Do

二、按要求完成下列各题。

1. He also likes doing kung fu. (改为同义句)

2. My uncle likes hiking. (改为一般疑问句, 并作肯定回答)

3. Mike and John like playing football. (改为一般疑问句, 并作否定回答)

4. I also her Can friend be(?) (连词成句)

5. What are your hobbies? (根据实际情况回答问题)



能力重点练

三、任务型阅读。

- A. Oh, really? Does he speak English?
B. Yes. He can speak English. He learns it well.
C. Hi, Mike. Who is your pen pal?
D. Yes! And he is good at table tennis.
E. His name is Martin. He lives in England. But he is a Chinese boy.
F. Does he like playing football?

Task 1: 给句子排序, 使它们成为一段通顺的对话。

_____ → _____ → _____ →
_____ → _____ → _____

Task 2: 阅读对话, 回答问题。

1. Who is Mike's pen pal?

2. Does Martin live in China?

3. Can Martin speak English?

4. What is Martin good at?

Task 3: 你还想了解 Martin 的什么信息? 请你以问题的形式呈现出来。

_____?

Task 4: 请你以思维导图的形式展示 Martin 的基本信息。



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

Part B Let's learn Listen, match and say



基础重点练

一、写出下列动词的第三人称单数形式。

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. look _____ | 2. have _____ |
| 3. pass _____ | 4. carry _____ |
| 5. drink _____ | 6. go _____ |
| 7. stay _____ | 8. make _____ |
| 9. come _____ | 10. watch _____ |
| 11. plant _____ | 12. fly _____ |
| 13. study _____ | 14. brush _____ |
| 15. do _____ | 16. teach _____ |

二、用 do 或 does 的适当形式填空。

- _____ you ride a bike to school?
—Yes, I _____.
- _____ your sister like PE?
—No, she _____.
- What _____ the students have?
—They have some pens.
- How _____ Linda go to school?
—She goes to school on foot.
- He _____ not speak English. He speaks Chinese.
- _____ they watch TV on Sundays?
—Yes, they _____.
- My father and mother _____ not read newspapers on Saturdays.

三、画出句中错误的地方,并在横线上改正。

- Is your brother speak English? _____
- Does he like run? _____
- He likes play games after class. _____

4. Mr Wu teach us English. _____

5. She don't do her homework on Sundays.



能力重点练

四、按要求完成下列各题。

- I go to school by bus. (改为用 he 作主语的句子)

- Jim plays baseball very well. (改为一般疑问句)

- David doesn't like learning French. (改为肯定句)

- TV doesn't Alan watch school nights on(.)
(连词成句)

- We have enough time to do it. (改为否定句)

- Snoopy has a car. (对画线部分提问)

- Do you have a pencil? (改为用 she 作主语的句子)

五、用所给词的适当形式填空。

- Eliza sometimes _____ (do) word puzzles on Monday evenings.
- My mother _____ (drive) to work.
- The children like _____ (swim).
- My grandpa often _____ (watch) TV in the evening.
- Look! The dog is _____ (eat).



你真棒



有进步



加油哟



Part B Read and write- Let's wrap it up



基础重点练

一、按要求写单词。

1. don't (完整形式) _____
2. doesn't (完整形式) _____
3. watch (第三人称单数形式) _____
4. go (第三人称单数形式) _____
5. play (第三人称单数形式) _____
6. toy (复数形式) _____
7. cut (-ing 形式) _____
8. make (-ing 形式) _____

二、给下列句子选择相应的图片。

- () 1. My brother likes drawing cartoons.



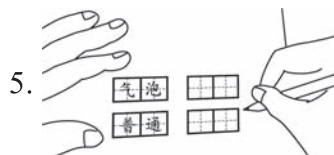
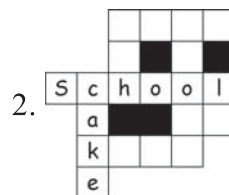
- () 2. My sister plays the piano every day.



- () 3. Martin likes listening to music.



三、看图，补全短文。



There are 5 people in my family—my mother, my father, my sister, my brother and me. I am a student. I like 1. _____. My father is a teacher. He likes 2. _____. My mother is good at cooking. She likes 3. _____. My little sister likes 4. _____. My big brother likes 5. _____. We have different hobbies, but we love each other.

四、选择合适的句子补全对话。(有两项多余)

Gao Xi: What are you doing, Li Tao?

Li Tao: 1. _____ He is a boy. His name is Mike.

Gao Xi: Where is he from? Is he from Australia?

Li Tao: 2. _____ He is from the USA.

Gao Xi: Does he live in New York?

Li Tao: 3. _____

Gao Xi: 4. _____

Li Tao: He likes reading books and dancing.

Gao Xi: Can he speak Chinese?

Li Tao: 5. _____

Gao Xi: Cool!

- A. Yes. He can speak Chinese well.
- B. Yes, he does.
- C. No, he can't.
- D. I am writing an email to my pen pal.
- E. What are his hobbies?
- F. No, he isn't.
- G. Where does he live?



能力重点练

五、根据表格内容，补全对话。

	Likes	Doesn't like
Linda	dancing and singing	playing football
Jack	drawing pictures	doing kung fu

Mike: Hi, John. Do you have a pen pal?

John: Yes! She is a girl. Her name is Linda.

Mike: 1. _____

John: She likes dancing and singing.

Mike: 2. _____

John: No, she doesn't. How about your pen pal?

Mike: He is a boy. His name is Jack. He likes

3. _____.

John: Does he like doing kung fu?

Mike: 4. _____ But I am interested in it.

John: Me too! Let's join the kung fu club and learn together.

Mike: Good idea!

六、阅读短文，回答问题。

Hello, I am Sarah. I live in London. I have a pen pal. Her name is Eliza. Eliza is a Chinese

girl. She lives in Chongqing. She likes climbing mountains and playing the violin. She often climbs the South Mountain with her family. And sometimes she plays the violin in the theatre in Chongqing. She goes to school on foot because her home is near her school. We often write emails to each other. We are good friends. This winter vacation, I will visit Chongqing. Eliza will be my great guide.

1. Who is Sarah's pen pal?

2. What are Eliza's hobbies?

3. Does Eliza often climb the South Mountain?

4. When will Sarah visit Chongqing?

5. Why does Eliza go to school on foot?

七、演讲与写作。

假如你是第六题中的 Eliza，请你根据第六题中的文章，充分发挥想象，介绍一下你的笔友 Sarah。

Unit 4 单元提升



Listening



听力音频

一、听录音，选出你所听到的句子中含有的内容。

- () 1. A. boys B. works C. likes
() 2. A. pictures B. puzzles C. makes
() 3. A. hobby B. hiking C. house
() 4. A. emails B. makes C. milk
() 5. A. eating B. cooking C. taking

二、听录音，判断下列图片与你所听到的内容是 (T) 否 (F) 一致。



()



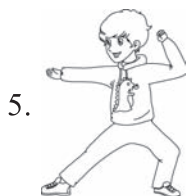
()



()



()



()



()

三、听录音，选择正确的答语。

- () 1. A. She is a good girl.
B. Li Hua is my pen pal.
C. He likes eating.

- () 2. A. He is fine.
B. She likes dancing.
C. He likes reading books and drawing cartoons.
() 3. A. I like cooking and dancing.
B. I have many friends.
C. I play football in the afternoon.
() 4. A. Yes, he is.
B. Yes, he does.
C. Yes, he can.
() 5. A. She will have a trip.
B. She is cooking.
C. She often drinks some tea.

四、听录音，在表格相应的栏里打“√”。

Lily			
Leo			
Mike			
Danny			
Eliza			

五、听短文，填空。

Come and see my new pen pal. His name is Danny. He 1. _____ in 2. _____. He 3. _____ Chinese. He likes 4. _____ and 5. _____. He 6. _____ to school by 7. _____. His father is a teacher in the same school. Every morning, his father 8. _____ to school with him. After school, they can 9. _____ together.



Reading and Writing

六、单项选择。

- () 1. —_____ does Martin live?
—He lives in Chongqing.
A. What
B. Where
C. Who
- () 2. My brother likes _____, and my sister likes _____.
A. playing football; playing the *pipa*
B. playing the football; playing *pipa*
C. playing football; playing *pipa*
- () 3. Look! Eliza is _____ to her pen pal.
A. writing a email
B. writing an email
C. write an email
- () 4. Every Sunday, my friend and I _____ in the bookstore.
A. reading books
B. read books
C. reads books
- () 5. I often _____ to music in the evening, but my sister often _____ word puzzles.
A. listening; doing
B. listen; doing
C. listen; does

七、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. —How _____ (do) Sarah go to school?
—She _____ (go) to school on foot.
2. —What _____ (be) his hobbies?
—He _____ (like) _____ (fly) a kite and _____ (write) diaries.
3. —What _____ (do) they do on Sundays?
—They _____ (have) dancing classes.

4. —Does Danny _____ (live) in the UK?
—Yes. And he _____ (study) Chinese.
5. Wow! So many _____ (toy) on the floor.

八、按要求完成下列各题。

1. Tom lives on a farm. (改为否定句)

2. What is your hobby? (改为复数句)

3. Amy likes dancing. (对画线部分提问)

4. The cat eats fish every day. (改为一般疑问句)

5. He does his homework after school every day.
(改为否定句)

九、选择合适的句子补全对话。(有两项多余)

- Eliza: Hi, Danny. 1. _____
- Danny: I am going to the bookstore. And I am going to buy a book for my pen pal.
- Eliza: Is your pen pal a Chinese?
- Danny: 2. _____ She is an English girl. But she lives in China.
- Eliza: 3. _____
- Danny: She likes reading Chinese stories. And she also likes playing table tennis.
- Eliza: Cool! Does she like Chinese food?
- Danny: 4. _____ She often makes dumplings with her family.
- Eliza: I love dumplings, too. 5. _____
- Danny: No, she can't. She uses a knife and fork. But I can teach her.
- Eliza: Good idea.



- A. No, she isn't.
 B. She is a good girl.
 C. Where are you going?
 D. Yes, she does.
 E. Can she use chopsticks?
 F. What are her hobbies?
 G. I like dancing and singing.

十、完形填空。

Jim's father 1 in a bank. He 2 to work by bus every morning. Sometimes he 3 his bike. He 4 never late for work. He 5 very hard.

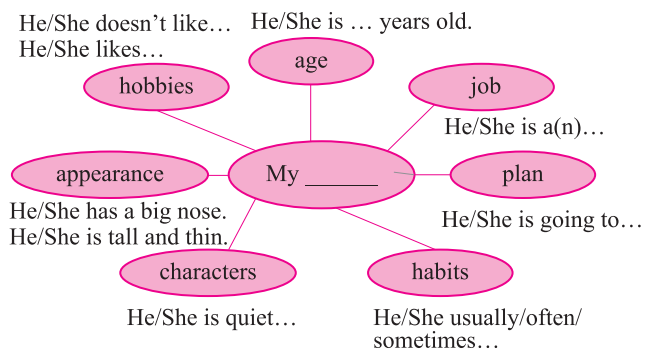
Jim 6 his father very much. He often 7 kites in front of his house. Sometimes Jim and his father 8 table tennis in Jim's school. Jim 9 to talk with his father. His father likes to 10 Jim talk about his friends and his school. Jim 11 many computer games, but he doesn't 12 them every day. He also works hard at his lessons.

- () 1. A. works B. work C. is
 () 2. A. go B. going C. goes
 () 3. A. ride B. rides C. riding
 () 4. A. am B. is C. are
 () 5. A. worked B. working C. works
 () 6. A. loves B. love C. loved
 () 7. A. fly B. flies C. flying

- () 8. A. play B. plays C. played
 () 9. A. likes B. like C. liked
 () 10. A. listen to B. listens to C. listening to
 () 11. A. have B. has C. had
 () 12. A. plays B. playing C. play

十一、演讲与写作。

请以“My _____”为题写一篇小短文介绍你的朋友或家人。你可以参考下面的思维导图，发挥想象。



My _____



你真棒



有进步



加油哟

素养抽测卷二 (Unit 3-Unit 4)

时间：60 分钟 满分：100 分



听力音频

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	十三	十四	总分
得分															



Listening Part (40分)

一、听录音，判断下列图片与你所听到的内容是 (T) 否 (F) 相符。(5 分)

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

()

()

()

()

()

二、听录音，选出你所听到的句子中含有的单词或短语。(5 分)

- () 1. A. price

B. postcards

C. puzzle
- () 2. A. supermarket

B. space

C. shall
- () 3. A. comic

B. cinema

C. club
- () 4. A. have an art lesson

B. have an English lesson

C. have a Chinese lesson
- () 5. A. going ice-skating

B. making a snowman

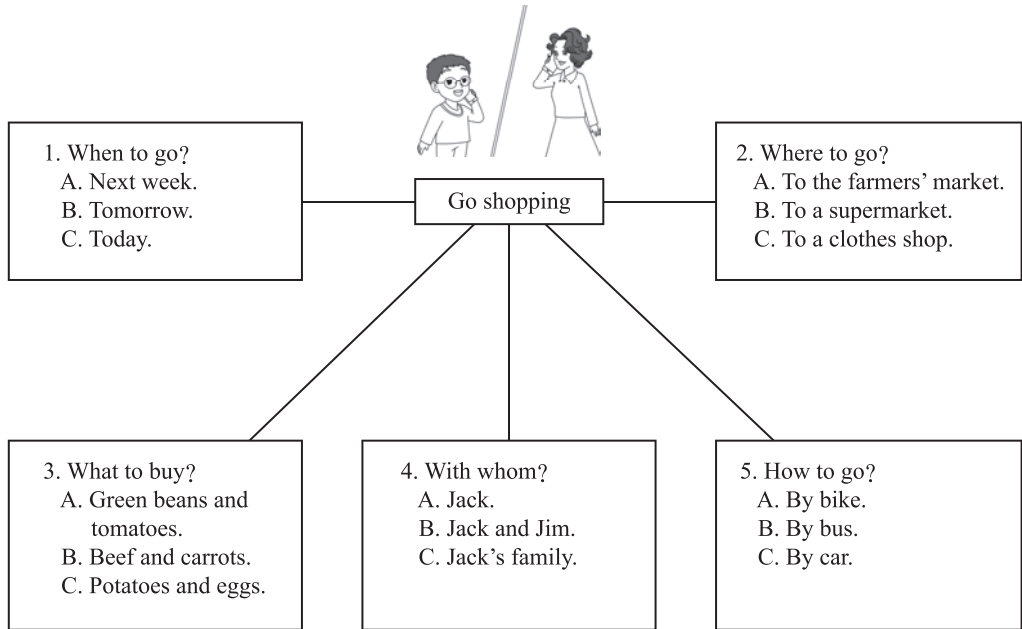
C. going for a picnic

三、听对话，填入所缺单词 (每空一词)。(10 分)

Judy: Where are you going this _____, Simon?
Simon: I'm going to the _____ with my friend David.
Judy: David? Is he the boy good at _____ ?
Simon: Yes, you're right.
Judy: What are you going to buy?
Simon: We are going to buy some _____.
Judy: What time are you going there?
Simon: At _____ o'clock.

Judy: How are you going there?
Simon: We are going there by _____.

四、听对话，圈出正确的答案。(10 分)



五、听短文，判断下列句子正 (T) 误 (F)。(10 分)

- () 1. Tomorrow is Saturday.

() 2. John and his father are going to the food shop.

() 3. They will walk to the shop and buy some fruit.

() 4. Sandwiches are John's favourite food.

() 5. John will do housework in the evening.



Writing Part (60分)

六、选出可以替换句中画线部分的同类选项。(可多选) (5 分)

- () 1. John is going to buy his favourite comic book.

A. picture book

B. storybook

C. read a poem
- () 2. Tomorrow is the Mid-Autumn Festival.

A. autumn season

B. China's National Day

C. Christmas Day

- () 3. My brother also likes singing.

A. drawing

B. interesting

C. painting
- () 4. Peter studies Chinese.

A. French

B. English

C. Japanese
- () 5. He sometimes reads to the cows!

A. usually

B. always

C. will

七、选择正确的答案。(有的可多选) (10 分)

- () 1. Which is WRONG?

A. We can dance.

B. I like swim.

C. She lives in a city.
- () 2. We are going to play football _____.

A. this afternoon

B. yesterday

C. next Monday
- () 3. What _____ Lily and Lucy going to do this evening?

A. are

B. am

C. is
- () 4. I like playing _____ *erhu*, but I don't like playing _____ basketball.

A. /; the

B. the; the

C. the; /
- () 5. Miss Green is a music teacher. She often _____ us to sing.

A. teach

B. teaches

C. teaching
- () 6. Mike doesn't _____ the dishes every day.

A. do

B. doing

C. does
- () 7. —Can I help you? —_____.

A. Here you are

B. Really? Thank you

C. Yes. I want a notebook
- () 8. My grandma always tells _____ stories.

A. we

B. us

C. me

- () 9. We will all _____ together tonight.
A. are B. am C. be
- () 10. Do you want to learn _____ robots?
A. of B. about C. at

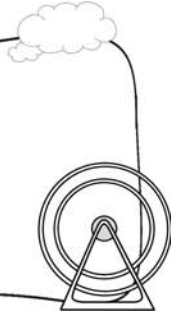
八、根据句意和首字母提示完成单词。(7分)

1. I'm going to buy some c_____ books tomorrow.
2. I have an English d_____. It can help me learn English words.
3. Next weekend, my family will go to Kunming to take a t_____.
4. I'm going to see a f_____ about Spider-Man in Red Star Cinema this evening.
5. After working, he often v_____ his friends on the way home.
6. Chen Jie is w_____ a postcard to her mother now.
7. Every afternoon, Jane d_____ her homework.

九、给下列句子选择正确的答句。（有两项多余）（5分）

- () 1. What's your father's hobby?
- () 2. What is Sarah doing?
- () 3. Is your mother going to climb a mountain?
- () 4. Does he like watching TV?
- () 5. Do you want to be my pen pal?

- A. Yes, I do. B. She is writing a letter.
C. She likes doing kung fu. D. Yes, she is.
E. He likes playing the *suona*. F. No, he doesn't.
G. She is going to cook Chinese food.



十、选择合适的句子补全对话。(有一项多余) (5 分)

Sam: 1. _____

Guide: We're going to visit the Temple of Heaven(天坛)and the Summer Palace.

Sam: 2. _____

Guide: No. It's not far from our hotel. 3. _____

Sam: When are we going to the Great Wall?

Guide: 4. _____ And then we are going to visit the Forbidden City(紫禁城) the day after tomorrow.

Sam: Wonderful! 5. _____

- A. We're going to arrive there in twenty minutes.
B. We will have a good time.
C. How are we going today?
D. Tomorrow morning.
E. Is the Temple of Heaven far from here?
F. Where are we going today?

十一、按要求完成下列各题。(5分)

1. to you fly Are a going kite(?) (连词成句)

2. My mother makes some food every Wednesday afternoon. (改为否定句)

3. We are going to the post office tomorrow. (改为用 Lily 作主语的句子)

4. My sister likes go hiking. (改错)

5. What are your hobbies? (根据实际情况回答问题)

十二、根据上下文和首字母提示,完成下面的短文。(10分)

Amy and Ann 1. a _____ twin sisters. They 2. l _____ the same. They are
3. f _____ London. They study in the No. 1 Primary School. But they are not in the
4. s _____ class. Amy is in 5. C _____ One, and Ann is in Class Two. Amy
6. l _____ singing and dancing. Ann's hobby is 7. d _____ pictures. They have a
good 8. C _____ friend. Her name is Chen Jie. She is 9. i _____ Amy's class.
She 10. s _____ Chinese and English well.

十三、任务型阅读。(7分)

Mike is going to visit his uncle and aunt this weekend. They work on a farm. Mike is going to help his uncle with the animals on Saturday morning. After lunch, he is going to collect vegetables. It will be hard work but will also be fun. In the evening, he's going to see the stars on the hill. On Sunday, Mike is going to climb a mountain and go fishing in the lake. Then he is going to go home at five in the afternoon. He will have a fun weekend. It will be an adventure.

Task 1: 请给短文起个标题，写在横线上。(1 分)

Task 2: 阅读短文，补全表格中的内容。(5 分)

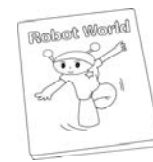
Saturday	<p>Mike is going to do many things.</p> <p>In the morning, Mike is going to 1. _____.</p> <p>In the afternoon, 2. _____.</p> <p>In the evening, 3. _____.</p>
Sunday	<p>Mike 4. _____.</p> <p>Mike is going to go home 5. _____.</p>

Task 3: 文中画线句子中的 adventure 与下面哪句话中的画线部分表达的意思是一致的? 将其序号填在括号里。(1 分)

- () A. John is a big fan of sports. He likes basketball games best.
B. Amy likes going shopping with her mother on the weekend.
C. Peter will have a wonderful and exciting holiday on May Day.

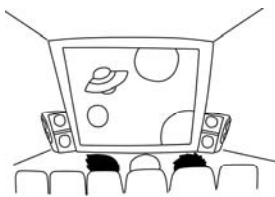
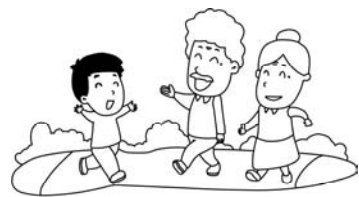
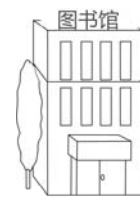
十四、书面表达。(6分)

(一) 看图, 根据自己的实际情况完成对话。(2 分)



1. —Which book are you going to buy?
— _____
2. — _____
—Yes. Let's go to the club together.

(二) 周末要到了, Bill 准备如何安排呢? 请根据图片写一写他的周末计划。(4 分)

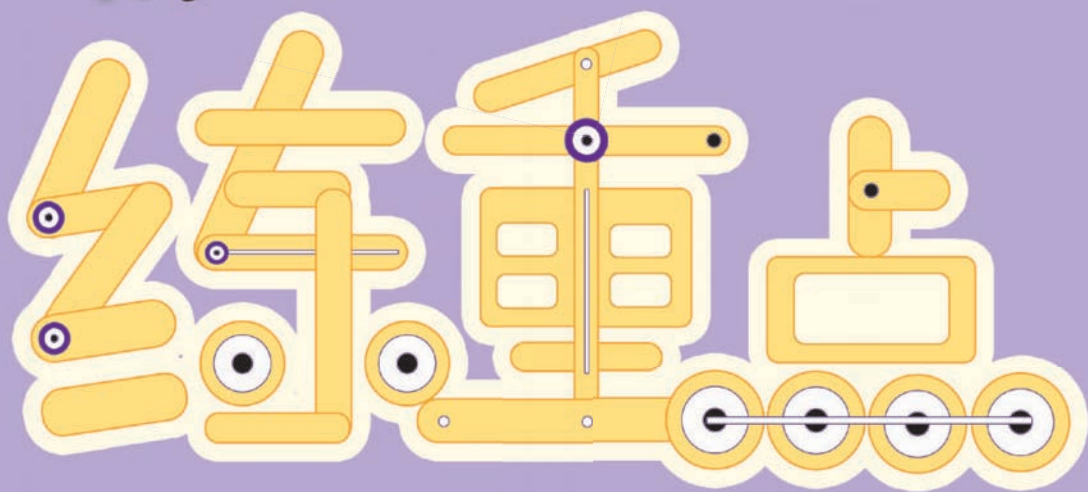


Hello, I'm Bill. I'm going to have a busy weekend.

冲刺名校必备



黄冈小状元



六年级英语上 **RP**

- 阅读素养训练
- 参考答案及听力材料

Topic 3 Jobs

Lesson 1 Dream jobs



朗读音频

Everyone has a dream. Someone wants to be a doctor to help **relieve** the pain. Someone wants to be an engineer to **design** new cars. Someone wants to be a teacher to help children learn. Others want to travel all around the world.

My dream is to be a **lawyer**. I'm going to study hard. I should study more subjects, **especially** the subjects about law. After **graduating**, I'm going to study at a lawyer office to learn more **skills**. Then I am going to work hard in my own lawyer office.

I know there will be many difficulties, but I will never give up. I'm sure I will become a great lawyer in the future.



Word bank

relieve/rɪ'li:v/v. 缓解; 减轻; 解除

design/dI'zaIn/v. 设计

lawyer/'lɔːjə(r)/n. 律师

especially/ɪ'speʃəli/*adv.* 尤其; 特别

graduate/'grædʒueɪt/*v.* 大学毕业

skill/skɪl/*n.* 技巧; 技艺; 技能



Exercises

 I. Read and choose. 读一读，选择正确的答案。

- () 1. Someone wants to be a(n) _____ to help children learn.
A. doctor B. teacher C. engineer
- () 2. According to (根据) the underlined word “pain” in the passage, the sentence
“The man has a pain in his head” means “_____”. (逻辑训练: **Making inferences** “推理”)
A. The man has a headache B. The man has a big head
C. The man is a head teacher
- () 3. (多选题) If we want to be a lawyer, we should _____.
A. study hard B. study the subjects about law
C. design new cars



II. Read and answer. 读一读，回答问题。

1. What is the writer going to do first after graduating?

2. If there are difficulties, will the writer give up?

3. What's your dream job? Why? (根据实际情况回答问题)



Learn and try

other 与 others 的区别

1. other 可作形容词或代词，作形容词时，意思是“别的，其他的”，作代词时，泛指“其他的（人或物）”。

例如：Put it in your other hand. 把它放在你的另一只手里。

2. others 是 other 的复数形式，泛指“另外几个”“其余的”，在句中可作主语、宾语。

例如：Some of us like singing, and others like swimming.

我们一些人喜欢唱歌，其余的人喜欢游泳。

Choose and fill in the blanks. 选词填空

1. Are there any _____ (other/others) problems?

2. Some students are listening to the radio, and _____ (other/others) are watching TV.

Lesson 2 Guess the jobs



朗读音频

In a small town, there is an English teacher, a **dentist**, a truck driver and a cook. They are all good friends. What are their names? One is Eric, one is Gerry, one is Godfrey and one is Albert. Eric's, Gerry's and Godfrey's sons are in the same class. Albert has no child. He teaches his friends' sons English. Eric often cooks for the driver and the dentist. Gerry's son passes the dentist's house on his way home. The dentist's house is behind Gerry's.



Word bank

dentist/'dentɪst/n. 牙医

Exercises

I. Read and judge. 读一读, 判断下列句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

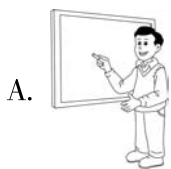
- () 1. Gerry is an English teacher.
() 2. Gerry's house is in front of the dentist's.

II. Read and choose. 读一读, 选择正确的答案。

- () 1. Are all the four people good friends?
A. Yes, they are. B. No, they aren't. C. We don't know.
- () 2. Which is right?
A. Godfrey can take the children to school.
B. Albert has no son.
C. Gerry often cleans and checks people's teeth.

III. Read and match. 读一读, 连一连。

1. Eric 2. Gerry 3. Godfrey 4. Albert



Learn and try

on one's way home 里的 one's 可以用什么词替代

one's 可以用形容词性物主代词替代, 如 my(我的)、your(你的, 你们的)、our(我们的)、his(他的)、her(她的)、its(它的)、their(他/她/它们的), 或者用 's 形式的名词所有格替代, 如 father's、Lily's 等。

例如: on Lily's way home 在莉莉回家的路上

Fill in the blanks. 填空。

1. On _____ way home, I met Miss White.
2. On _____ way home, they bought some apples.



Topic 4 Travel



朗读
音频

Lesson 1 Monkey King hit White-Bone Monster

Long long ago, Tangseng, Monkey King, Pigsy and Sandy went on a long **journey** to the West. They met with many problems on the journey.

One day, they came to a big mountain. They were very hungry and thirsty. Monkey King drew a magic circle on the ground. He said, "Don't walk out of the circle." Then he went to look for some food and water.

In the big mountain, there was White-Bone Monster. It wanted to eat Tangseng. So it turned into a beautiful girl. She gave some food to Tangseng. Tangseng started to leave the circle. At the moment, Monkey King came back and hit her to death.

White-Bone Monster didn't give up. The second time it turned into the girl's mother, and the third time it turned into the girl's father. Monkey King also beat them to death. Tangseng thought they were kind people, so he was very angry. He drove Monkey King away.

Later, White-Bone Monster caught Tangseng. Tangseng **recognized** his mistake. Luckily, Monkey King returned and killed White-Bone Monster.



Word bank

journey/'dʒɜːni/n. 旅行；出行

recognize/'rekəɡnaɪz/v. 承认；意识到



Exercises

I. Read and number. 读一读，用数字给下列句子排序。

- () Monkey King drew a magic circle on the ground.
- () White-Bone Monster turned into a woman. And Monkey King killed the woman.
- () Monkey King killed White-Bone Monster.
- () White-Bone Monster turned into a girl with some food.
- () Tangseng and his three disciples(徒弟) came to a big mountain.
- () White-Bone Monster turned into an old man. And Monkey King killed the man.
- () Monkey King killed the girl.

II. Read and answer. 读一读，回答问题。

1. How did Tangseng and his disciples feel when they came to a big mountain?

2. Why was Tangseng angry?



Learn and try

turn into 与 turn to 的用法

turn into 意为“变成……”。

例如：Water turns into ice when it freezes. 水冻结时会变成冰。

turn to 意为“向某人/事物求助”。

例如：He turned to me for help. 他向我求助。

She often turns to the book for guidance. 她经常参考那本书。



朗读音频

Lesson 2 Welcome to London!

London is a big and old city in the UK. There are many interesting places in this city. Many people visit it every year. You can visit Big Ben, the London Eye, the British Museum, Hyde Park and Tower Bridge.

To travel around London, you can take the underground. If you can take the famous red double-decker bus, you will see a wonderful view of the city.

Football is the most **popular** sport in London. There are many football clubs in the city. Kids love football. They play football after school. They often watch football games with their parents at weekends.

The weather in London is very **changeable**. When people travel around the city, they always take umbrellas with them.

Welcome to London! You will have a good trip!



Word bank

popular/'pɒpjələ(r)/adj. 流行的；受欢迎的

changeable/'tʃeɪndʒəbl/adj. 易变的；常变的



Exercises

I. Read and choose. 读一读，选择正确的答案。

- () 1. _____ is the capital city of the UK.
A. Sydney B. London C. Ottawa
- () 2. _____ looks like two buses put together.
A. The underground B. The taxi C. The double-decker bus

II. Read and fill in the blanks. 读一读，填空，完成下列句子。

1. There are five interesting places in London mentioned (被提及). They are _____, _____, _____, _____ and _____.
2. Children in London love _____.
3. It always _____ in London. People always take _____.

III. Think and answer. 想一想，回答问题。

If you visit London, what other places do you want to visit?



Learn and try

metro、subway 和 underground 的区别

metro 名词。源于法语单词 métro，它作为地铁的口语化表达，完整说法是 metropolitan railroad/railway。

subway 名词。subway 指城市中的地铁或通道，主要用于美国。

underground 名词。underground 指城市中的地铁，主要用于英国。



参考答案及听力材料

Unit 1 How can I get there?

Part A Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. D 2. A 3. E 4. B 5. C
二、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. C
三、1. post office 2. science museum
3. hospital 4. zoo 5. library
6. clothes shop
四、1. D 2. E 3. B 4. A 5. C

Part A Let's learn Make a map and talk

- 一、1. library 2. next to 3. a beautiful dress
4. Yes, there is.
二、1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T
三、1. C zoo 2. B hospital 3. D gym
4. A bookstore
四、1. It's in front of the cinema. (答案不唯一)
2. No, there isn't.
3. Yes, it is.
4. It's in front of the theatre. (答案不唯一)
5. Renmin Square is between the hospital and the pet shop.

五、(范文) My Dream City

I have a dream city in my heart. My home is in the centre. The ice cream shop is next to my home. I can eat ice cream every day. The library is next to my home too. I can read books there every afternoon after school. And the Chinese restaurant is in front of my home. I can go there to eat *jiaozi* because I love it very much. There is a park near my home. When I go to school, I can cross the park. That's wonderful. This is my dream city. Do you like it?

Part B Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. left/wrong 2. small 3. short 4. new/young
5. short 6. full 7. slow 8. thin 9. ugly
10. sad 11. poor 12. hard
二、1. A 2. ABC
三、1. E 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. A
四、略
五、1. crossing 2. six 3. straight 4. sixth
5. turn left 6. first 7. second 8. first 9. turn

Part B Let's learn Be a tour guide

- 一、1. ABC 2. AB
二、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A
三、Task 1. 略
Task 2. A. zoo B. hospital C. science museum
D. library

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up

- 一、1. 全球定位系统 2. 硬黑 (指中等硬度的铅笔芯) 3. 自己动手 4. 美国 5. 英国
6. 中国 7. 联合国 8. 不明飞行物
DIY do-it-yourself
HB hard black (答案不唯一)
二、1. C compass 2. B GPS 3. A map
三、C→D→A→E→B
四、1. He wants to go to the museum.
2. Yes, there is. 3. Fifteen minutes.
4. It's the supermarket.
5. He's helpful./He's kind. (答案不唯一)
五、A Go straight; turn right; left
B turn right; turn left; park; right
(路线图略)
六、(一) Task 1: map; GPS; compass; tree
Task 2: The smart watch has GPS.
The cars have GPS.
Task 3: south; north
(二) Task 1: the four great inventions
Task 2: the compass → papermaking → gunpowder → printing
七、(范文) Hello, Lucy. You can start from our school. Go straight and turn right at the cinema. Then turn left at the hotel. Turn right at the first crossing. You can see my home on your left. Welcome! (路线不唯一)

Unit 1 单元提升

[听力材料]

- 一、1. Please turn right at the bookstore.
2. —Where is the science museum?
—It is in front of the school.
3. Be quiet! Don't shout in the library.
4. Follow me.

5. The Italian restaurant is next to the bookstore.

- 二、1. We can see interesting films in the cinema.
2. Go straight and then turn left. You can see the school.
3. You can buy some beautiful postcards in the post office.
4. The hospital is next to the zoo.
5. I want to buy a book in that bookstore.
6. Just turn right. You can see the park.

- 三、1. Where is the Chinese restaurant?
2. Is there a cinema in the city?
3. How can I get to the hospital?
4. What a cute girl you are!
5. Is it far?

四、Mike: Hello, Wu Yifan. Is there a pet hospital in our town?

Wu Yifan: Of course! But what's wrong?

Mike: My dog is ill. Where is it?

Wu Yifan: Go straight and then turn right at the zoo. You can see the pet hospital on your left. It's next to a bookstore.

Mike: Is it far?

Wu Yifan: No, it isn't.

Mike: Thank you.

Wu Yifan: You're welcome.

- 五、I live in a small town. My school is not far from my home. My school is next to a science museum. In front of my school, there is a bookstore. We can buy books there. On the weekend, my friends and I can see films in a cinema. It is near my home. A post office is behind the cinema. And there is a big theatre. It's opposite the cinema. We live a happy life here.

[参考答案]

一、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B

二、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. F 5. E 6. D

三、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. C

四、1. × 2. × 3. × 4. √ 5. √

五、1. far from 2. next to 3. museum
4. bookstore 5. see films 6. cinema 7. near
8. post office 9. theatre 10. happy

六、1. × 2. × 3. √ 4. √

七、1. A 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. C

八、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A

- 九、1. How nice the day is!
2. What a big elephant!
3. Where is the supermarket?
4. How can I get to the museum?
5. It is

十、A. hospital B. zoo C. pet shop
D. cinema E. theatre

十一、1. C 2. E 3. F 4. A 5. B 6. D

- 十二、1. Because he loves the hot pot there.
2. We can take the No. 105 bus.
3. Yes, it is.

十三、(范文)

Dear Amy,

Please come to my birthday party at 7 p. m. on Sunday. Now I'll tell you how to get to my home. Turn left at the school, and then go straight for 3 minutes. Turn left at the hospital, and then turn right. You can see the science museum on your left. My home is next to the science museum.

Welcome!

Yours,

Chen Jie

Unit 2 Ways to go to school

Part A Let's try Let's talk

一、1. bike 2. bus 3. plane 4. ship 5. train

二、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. A

- 三、1. How do you come to school?
2. I often go to school on foot.
3. How often do the boys play football together?
4. 略

四、Task 1: 1. 一周一次 2. 总是
Task 2: 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T

Part A Let's learn Write and say

一、1. walks 2. by bus 3. rides 4. take
5. takes a plane

- 二、1. from; by car
2. How do you; Zhoushan; by ship
3. they; London; by plane
4. does she get; by plane 5. 略

三、略

Part B Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. Stop!
2. Don't turn right.



3. No parking.
4. Don't touch the door.
5. No smoking. 6. No littering.
7. No eating or drinking.

二、Task 1: 1. A 2. A

Task 2: 1. Please 2. Don't

Task 3: Please don't run. (设计图标略)

Part B Let's learn Role-play

一、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

二、1. library 2. Turn right 3. crossing 4. look left
5. look right

三、1. C car 2. B goes 3. C on

四、1. library 2. on foot 3. get 4. taxi 5. fast
6. take 7. cheap 8. subway 9. fast/cheap
10. cheap/fast

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up

一、1. C 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. C

二、1. B by bus 2. E by sled
3. C walk 4. D by ferry
5. A on horseback

三、1. × 2. × 3. × 4. √ 5. ×
6. × 7. √ 8. × 9. √ 10. ×

四、B→D→A→C→E

五、1. B 2. G 3. E 4. D 5. A

六、1. She goes to school on foot.
2. Because she works in Eliza's school.
3. Because the place he works is far from his home.
4. 12 times a year.
5. They go to the library by bike.

七、1. ⑥④②① (答案不唯一)

2. Hello, I am Amy. This winter holiday, my family will go to Sanya on vacation. How can we get there? Listen to me.

We can get to Guangzhou from our home by train. And then we can take the bus from Guangzhou to Xuwen. In Xuwen, we can take a big ship to Haikou. It will take us about 2 hours. At last, we can get to Sanya from Haikou by car. We can rent a car for our trip.

Unit 2 单元提升

[听力材料]

一、1. I go to school by sled.

2. Don't turn right.
3. Please turn left at the crossing.
4. Don't touch the door.
5. The boy goes to school on horseback.
6. No parking.

二、1. Where is the bookstore?

2. How do you go to school?

3. Don't touch the door. It's dangerous.

4. It's a red light now.

5. I am on the ferry.

三、1. M: Hi, Lily. How do you go to school?

W: I go to school on foot.

2. W: Where is the hospital?

M: Look at that crossing. It's over there.

3. W: How does your father go to work?

M: He drives a car to work.

4. W: Tom, please do not shout in the library.

M: Oh, sorry!

5. W: Don't run, John. It's dangerous. And you must wear a life jacket.

M: OK!

四、Mike wants to go to the post office. It is far from his home. He can take the No. 7 bus. The bus stop is next to the restaurant near his home. Mike walks to the bus stop. He goes straight and turns right at the crossing. He must pay attention to the traffic lights. The bus stop is on his right.

[参考答案]

一、2 3 5 6 1 4

二、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. C

三、1. C 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A

四、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F

五、2. subway 3. pink 4. boat

5. fast (答案不唯一)

六、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. B

七、1. How; on foot 2. slow down; stop 3. by bus

4. by car; by car 5. by plane; by ship

八、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. C

7. A 8. A 9. C 10. A

九、Task 1:

Name	Place	Way
John	Sanya	by ship
Amy	Venice	by plane
Mike	Beijing	by train
Linda	Beijing	by train

- Task 2: 1. He can see many sea creatures.
2. She can get here and there in Venice by gondola.
3. He wants to visit the Great Wall and the Summer Palace.
4. No, they won't.

十、1. 略

2. (范文) Hello, I am Xiaohong. I am 11 years old. I am a student. My school is near my home. Usually I go to school on foot. Sometimes I ride a bike to school. My father is a firefighter. He always goes to work by car. My mother is a nurse. She often goes to work by subway. But sometimes she works at night, so she drives a car to the hospital. Mingming is my best friend. He often goes to school by subway. It's fast and cheap.

Unit 3 My weekend plan

Part A Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. E 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D
二、1. C 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. AB
三、1. B 2. D 3. A 4. E 5. C

Part A Let's learn Make a plan

- 一、1. take a trip 2. go to the supermarket
3. visit my grandparents 4. see a film
5. play the *erhu* 6. play football
二、1. be 2. go 3. are 4. do 5. draw
三、1. He is going to do his homework.
2. They are going to plant a tree.
3. Yes, they are.
4. Yes, they do.

- 四、(范文) Hello, I am Xiaohong. The weekend is coming. I am going to do my homework on Saturday morning. My family are going to have a picnic in the afternoon. On Sunday, we are going to visit my grandparents. And we are going to have a big dinner with them. Then we are going to walk back.

Part B Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. B 2. A 3. A
二、1. What are you going to do this summer?
2. Where are they going to play basketball?
3. When is she going to visit her grandparents?
4. Who is going to see a film tonight?

5. 略

- 三、3 4 1 2 5

- 四、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T

Part B Let's learn Role-play

- 一、1. A postcard 2. C comic book
3. B dictionary 4. D word book

- 二、1. AB 2. B 3. AB 4. B

- 三、1. B 2. E 3. D 4. C 5. A

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up

- 一、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. C

- 二、1. A 2. A 3. C 4. ABC 5. B

- 三、1. D 2. B 3. A 4. E 5. C

- 四、1. They are going to plant flowers in the garden.
2. He is going to send a postcard to his pen pal.
3. What are Linda's family going to do on Sunday?

- 五、1. make dumplings
2. have a big dinner
3. get red envelopes
4. let off fireworks
5. watch TV

- 六、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. C
7. A 8. C 9. B 10. A

七、1. 略

2. (范文) Hello, I'm Xiaoming. I am going to have an English class on Saturday morning and play football on Saturday afternoon. And I am going to see a film with my friends in the evening. On Sunday, I am going to clean my room in the morning and go swimming in the afternoon. And I am going to watch TV with my family in the evening.

Unit 3 单元提升

[听力材料]

- 一、1. I am going to have an art lesson on Sunday.
2. My cousin sent a postcard to me.
3. Usually we visit our grandparents once a week.
4. I love the books about space.
5. Tonight we will have a big dinner together.
二、1. My uncle is going to cook for us on our Family Day.
2. Sarah will visit her grandparents tomorrow.
3. My family are going to take a trip this summer.
4. They are going to make a snowman in winter.



5. After dinner, Mingming usually washes the dishes.

6. Honghong is good at doing housework.

- 三、1. Let's make a plan for our holidays.
2. What are you going to do this afternoon?
3. What is John going to buy in the supermarket?
4. When are you going to the zoo?
5. Where are your cousins going?

- 四、1. Amy will take a trip with her family next summer.
2. Mike is going to play baseball with his friends next week.
3. Sarah is going to go ice-skating this afternoon.
4. John is going to see a film with his classmate tonight.
5. Chen Jie is going to have a picnic with her family this morning.

五、Hello, I'm Mike. Today is Sunday. In the morning, I am going to have a Chinese class and then I will play the guitar. In the afternoon, I am going to the bookstore for a dictionary. After that, I am going to play football with my friends. In the evening, I am going to read books. Usually I read for 2 hours every day. I love reading very much. What a busy day!

[参考答案]

一、1. A 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C

二、5 4 1 3 6 2

三、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C

四、1. —B—e 2. —D—d 3. —E—b 4. —A—c
5. —C—a

五、1. A 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. C

六、1. B the supermarket/buy some food
2. C wash my clothes
3. A make a snowman
4. D buy a comic book
5. E play football

七、1. are 2. goes 3. the 4. / 5. an
6. going 7. go 8. am 9. is 10. a

八、1. will
2. Does she do her homework after school?
3. When are you going to have a show?
4. Are you going to buy a postcard?
5. What is he going to do this evening?

九、C→D→E→A→G→F→H→B

- 十、1. Sunday is his Family Day.
2. She is going to wash clothes.
3. He is going to feed his pets.
4. They are going to walk there.
5. Yes, they are.

十一、(范文)

Dear Eliza,

How are you these days? I am fine. Today I want to introduce to you one traditional Chinese festival—the Lantern Festival. The Lantern Festival is after the Spring Festival. We are going to eat *yuanxiao*, and we are going to hang lanterns. In the evening, we will guess lantern riddles. It's fun. Do you want to join us? I hope everything goes well with you.

Yours,
Xiaohong

拓展提升训练(一)

- 一、1. bookstore 2. cinema 3. crossing
4. red light 5. look right; look left
6. visit 7. hospital 8. postcards
二、1. Where 2. How 3. slow down; stop
4. When
三、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. B
四、1. AB 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. C
7. AB
五、1. B play 2. A are 3. C 去掉
4. C 去掉 5. B lots
六、1. Where is the cinema?
2. How do you usually go to school?
3. Amy and Tom walk to the park.
4. How beautiful the flower is!
5. My family take a bus to the park.
6. Is Mike going to see a film tonight?
七、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
八、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. A
7. A 8. C 9. A 10. A

- 九、1. 略
2. (范文) I am going to have a one-day trip with my friends. In the morning, we will go to the science museum. We will have fun there. It's near our hotel. We can get there on foot. In the afternoon, we will visit the old

town. We can see old streets there. And we can eat some delicious snacks there. In the evening, we will walk on Renmin Bridge. And there we can see the night view of the city. That's my plan. Do you like it? Join us!

Unit 4 I have a pen pal

Part A Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. B 2. C 3. E 4. D 5. A
二、1. Peter's 2. lives 3. singing 4. teach
5. likes; swimming 6. see 7. washing
三、1. ABC 2. AC 3. ABC
四、1. D 2. C 3. E 4. A 5. B

Part A Let's learn Do a survey

- 一、1. doing 2. drawing 3. singing 4. playing
5. dancing 6. making 7. hiking 8. taking
9. swimming 10. shopping 11. running
12. planning
二、1. A 2. A 3. AC 4. A
三、1. reading 2. drawing 3. climbing 4. listening
5. doing 6. singing 7. teach 8. planning
四、(范文) Hello, everyone. I am Eliza. Today I will give a report. There are 40 students in Class 2, Grade 6. Twenty-seven students like reading stories. I think they need a little library in their classroom. Twenty-four students like playing football. They can hold football matches. Sixteen students like swimming and eight students like doing kung fu. And only one student likes playing the *pipa*. She is special. She can show in the classroom. That's all. Thank you.

Part B Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. AB 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. A
二、1. He likes doing kung fu, too.
2. Does your uncle like hiking; Yes, he does
3. Do Mike and John like playing football; No, they don't
4. Can I also be her friend? 5. 略
三、Task 1: C→E→A→B→F→D
Task 2: 1. Martin is Mike's pen pal.
2. No, he doesn't.
3. Yes, he can.
4. He is good at table tennis.
Task 3: Does he like English food (答案不唯一)
Task 4: 略

Part B Let's learn Listen, match and say

- 一、1. looks 2. has 3. passes 4. carries 5. drinks
6. goes 7. stays 8. makes 9. comes 10. watches
11. plants 12. flies 13. studies 14. brushes
15. does 16. teaches
二、1. Do; do 2. Does; doesn't 3. do
4. does 5. does 6. Do; do 7. do
三、1. Is→Does 2. run→running
3. play→playing 4. teach→teaches
5. don't→doesn't
四、1. He goes to school by bus.
2. Does Jim play baseball very well?
3. David likes learning French.
4. Alan doesn't watch TV on school nights.
5. We don't have enough time to do it.
6. What does Snoopy have?
7. Does she have a pencil?
五、1. does 2. drives 3. swimming
4. watches 5. eating

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up

- 一、1. do not 2. does not 3. watches 4. goes
5. plays 6. toys 7. cutting 8. making
二、1. A 2. A 3. B
三、1. going hiking 2. doing word puzzles
3. making dumplings 4. reading stories
5. studying Chinese/learning Chinese
四、1. D 2. F 3. B 4. E 5. A
五、1. What are her hobbies?
2. Does she like playing football?
3. drawing pictures
4. No, he doesn't.
六、1. Eliza is Sarah's pen pal.
2. She likes climbing mountains and playing the violin.
3. Yes, she does.
4. She will visit Chongqing this winter vacation.
5. Because her home is near her school.
七、(范文) Hello, I am Eliza. I live in Chongqing. I have a pen pal. Her name is Sarah. Sarah is an English girl. She lives in London. She likes reading books and playing the violin. She goes to school by bus. We often write emails to each other. We are good friends. This winter vacation, she will visit Chongqing. I will be her guide.






Unit 4 单元提升

[听力材料]

- 一、1. My father works in a factory.
2. My brother likes doing word puzzles.
3. Going hiking is good for your health.
4. I usually write emails to my friends.
5. My mother likes cooking.
- 二、1. My family like having picnics.
2. Lily likes making dumplings.
3. Chen Jie likes playing the *pipa*.
4. My sister likes doing kung fu.
5. My brother likes dancing.
6. Meimei likes playing the piano.
- 三、1. Who is your pen pal?
2. What are Peter's hobbies?
3. What are your hobbies?
4. Does he walk to school?
5. What does Lily do on Sundays?
- 四、1. Lily likes singing Chinese songs and reading stories.
2. Leo likes listening to music and reading stories.
3. Mike's hobbies are the same as Leo's.
4. Danny likes singing and listening to music.
5. Eliza's hobbies are the same as Lily's.
- 五、Come and see my new pen pal. His name is Danny. He lives in Canada. He studies Chinese. He likes doing word puzzles and swimming. He goes to school by car. His father is a teacher in the same school. Every morning, his father drives a car to school with him. After school, they can go home together.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B
二、1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. F
三、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C
四、

			
Lily	√		√
Leo		√	√
Mike		√	√
Danny	√	√	
Eliza	√		√

- 五、1. lives 2. Canada 3. studies
4. doing word puzzles 5. swimming
6. goes 7. car 8. drives a car
9. go home
- 六、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C
- 七、1. does; goes 2. are; likes; flying; writing
3. do; have 4. live; studies 5. toys
- 八、1. Tom doesn't live on a farm.
2. What are your hobbies?
3. What is Amy's hobby?
4. Does the cat eat fish every day?
5. He doesn't do his homework after school every day.
- 九、1. C 2. A 3. F 4. D 5. E
- 十、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. B
8. A 9. A 10. A 11. B 12. C

十一、(范文) My Mother

My mother is a graceful lady. She is 36 years old. She has big eyes, a small mouth and a small nose. She has long black hair. She is kind. Sometimes she is strict. She has some hobbies. She likes swimming and reading books. She likes telling stories to me. She is a teacher. She usually goes to work on foot in the morning. Sometimes she drives her car to school. This winter vacation, our family will go to Beijing and visit the Great Wall. I love my mother.

Unit 5 What does he do?

Part A Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. doctor 2. cleaner 3. firefighter
4. dancer 5. writer
- 二、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. B
- 三、1. —What does your mother do?
—She's a cleaner.
2. —What does your uncle do?
—He's a taxi driver.

- 四、1. B 2. D 3. E 4. C 5. A

Part A Let's learn Listen, match and say

- 一、1. plays; player 2. works; worker
3. sings; singer 4. dancing; dancer
5. postman 6. cleaner 7. visit; visitors
- 二、1. police; woman; policewoman
2. post; man; postman

3. fire; fighter; firefighter

4. school; bag; schoolbag

- 三、1. D pupil 2. A nurse 3. E coach
4. B writer 5. F actress 6. C fisherman

Part B Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. BC 2. A 3. BC 4. A 5. A

- 二、Task 1: 1. doctor 2. hospital 3. on foot
4. crossing 5. school

Task 2: 略

Task 3: Turn left at the science museum and go straight. Then turn right at the park and then turn left at the cinema. The hospital is on her right.

Part B Let's learn Write and discuss

- 一、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B

- 二、1. coach; gym 2. pilot; plane
3. scientist; university 4. boat; fisherman
5. zoo; keeper 6. driver; taxi
7. cook; restaurant

- 三、1. What does your mother do?
2. Where does Oliver work?
3. How does she go to work?
4. They don't work in a gym.
5. We do our homework after school.

- 四、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F 6. T

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up

- 一、1. A 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. A

- 二、1. singer 2. gardener 3. host
4. secretary 5. cook 6. artist

- 三、1. D 2. A 3. C 4. E 5. B 6. F

- 四、1. do 2. be 3. is 4. does 5. have; has
6. are 7. on 8. at 9. am 10. a; an

- 五、1. D 2. B 3. A 4. E

- 六、Task 1: 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T

- Task 2: 1. He works in a toy factory.
2. She often goes to the library and reads storybooks on weekends.
3. 略

- 七、(范文) I have a dream. I want to be a basketball player. I am tall and strong. I am good at playing basketball. Jordan is my idol. Every week, I have 2 basketball classes. I keep practising. One day, my dream will come true.

Unit 5 单元提升

[听力材料]

- 一、1. Maria is a famous singer.
2. My brother wants to be a coach in the future.
3. He lives near the sea. He is a fisherman.
4. My grandpa works at a university.
5. We have many dreams. We should study hard.

- 二、1. Hi, I'm Cindy. I want to be a singer.
2. Hi, I'm Jim. I want to be an engineer.
3. Hi, I'm Liu Xin. I want to be an artist.
4. Hi, I'm Nick. I want to be a writer.
5. Hi, I'm Xiaoming. I want to be a policeman.

- 三、1. What does she do?
2. What is he going to do in the bookstore?
3. What can he do?
4. How does Alice go to school?
5. What is your hobby?
6. What do you want to be?

- 四、Hello, I'm Sarah. I'm from the USA. My father is a teacher. He teaches Chinese. Every day, he goes to work on foot. He likes writing. He is a writer, too. He writes many interesting stories. I love to read them. My mother likes singing. She is a singer. She goes to work by car. And I like painting, but I don't want to be an artist. I'm going to be a teacher.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. A

- 二、1. D 2. E 3. A 4. B 5. C

- 三、1. C 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. B

- 四、1. teacher 2. Chinese 3. on foot 4. writing
5. singer 6. by car 7. artist 8. teacher

- 五、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

- 六、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. BC 5. C
6. A 7. A 8. C

- 七、1. What does he do?
2. Where does she work?
3. How does your mother go to work?
4. Is he a fisherman; Yes, he is
5. What does he want to be?
6. Scientists usually work in universities.

- 八、1. C 2. F 3. D 4. A 5. B

- 九、1. She is young and tall.
2. She lives in a big city.



3. She helps children learn.
4. Yes, she does.
5. Because she likes planting flowers and feeding animals there.

十、(范文) My Family

Hi, I am Laura. I am a pupil. I like reading books. And I go to school by bike. My mother is a doctor. She works in the hospital near my school. She likes drawing and playing the *pipa*. She goes to work on foot. My father is a policeman and he works in a police station. He likes running and playing basketball. Sometimes we can play basketball together. He goes to work by subway. On Sundays, we visit my grandparents. And we can have dinner together.

Unit 6 How do you feel?

Part A Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. B 2. A 3. ABC 4. B 5. ABC
- 二、1. B 2. B 3. C
- 三、1. G 2. D 3. A 4. E 5. B

Part A Let's learn Write and say

- 一、1. B happy 2. A sad 3. E worried
4. D angry 5. C afraid 6. E worried
7. D angry 8. B happy
- 二、1. C 2. BC 3. C 4. BC
- 三、Task 1: 1. —B 2. —C 3. —D 4. —A
Task 2: 1. It's sunny.
2. We are going to have a picnic.
3. Because her pet dog broke her picture.
4. She is/feels worried.
5. Because he hasn't finished his homework.

Part B Let's try Let's talk

- 一、1. AC 2. AB 3. ABC 4. AB 5. AC
- 二、1. are 2. am 3. is 4. be
5. does 6. Do
- 三、1. C 2. A 3. F 4. D 5. B 6. E

Part B Let's learn Play card games

- 一、1. count; deep breath
2. warm clothes 3. see; doctor
4. do; exercise
- 二、1. You should eat more and do more exercise.
2. You should go and see a doctor.
3. You should do more exercise.
4. You should count to ten and take a deep

breath.

5. You should wear warm clothes.
6. You should eat some food. (此大题答案不唯一)

- 三、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A

Part B Read and write-Let's wrap it up

- 一、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B

- 二、1. happy 2. afraid 3. wear
4. count 5. angry

- 三、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B

- 四、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. E

- 五、1. Why is he angry with you?
2. The rats are afraid of the cat.
3. You should eat more food.
4. How does your father feel now?
5. You should wear warm clothes.

- 六、1. She doesn't want to go to school and she says she feels hot.
2. She feels worried.
3. No, she isn't.
4. Because she doesn't want to go to school.
5. Because she has to get up and go to school.
6. You should not lie to your mother. (答案不唯一)

- 七、Task 1: The Feelings of Animals (答案不唯一)

Task 2: When a cat is angry, it will hit you.

When a monkey is afraid, it will run away.

When a bear is hungry, it will attack a man.

When a turtle is sad, it will hide in a corner.

When a fish is hungry, it will swim here and there. (答案不唯一)

- 八、(范文) Amy is ill. She has a cold. She is very sad. Her mother is worried about her. They go to the hospital and see a doctor. The doctor asks Amy to drink more water and have a rest. I think Amy should do more exercise when she is better, and stay healthy.

Unit 6 单元提升

[听力材料]

- 一、1. mud 2. worry 3. afraid 4. feel 5. count

- 二、1. The rabbit is stuck in the mud.
2. She feels very afraid.
3. They are playing with the leaves.
4. The mouse can play the violin.
5. His teacher is angry with him.

- 三、1. What's wrong with you?
2. How do you feel?
3. Does she feel better?
4. I am angry now. What should I do?
5. I feel ill. What should I do?

四、There are many children in the classroom. They have different feelings. Tom is worried because his cat is ill. Mary gets many birthday gifts. She is happy. Sam's ball is broken. He is angry. Ann can't find her homework. She is sad. And how about Lily? She is tired because she did a lot of homework just now.

- 五、M: You look so happy today, Lily.
W: Yes. My family are going to have a birthday party for me.
M: Really? Who will go to your party?
W: Tom wants to go to my party. But his mother is ill. He can't go.
M: Oh, he should stay with his mother and look after her.
W: Yes. They are going to see a doctor.
M: Can I go to your party?
W: Sure.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. A

- 二、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

- 三、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C

四、

Feeling Name	worried	sad	happy	tired	angry
Tom	✓				
Mary			✓		
Sam					✓
Ann		✓			
Lily				✓	

- 五、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A

- 六、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. F
8. T 9. F 10. T

- 七、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C

- 八、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B
6. C 7. A 8. ABC 9. C

- 九、1. afraid of 2. is angry 3. sad/unhappy
4. What's; about 5. do more exercise

- 十、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. E 5. D

- 十一、Task 1: 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
Task 2: 1. happy 2. sad 3. worried

十二、(范文) I have many friends. Every day, they have different feelings. Lily's cat is ill. She is sad. She should take it to a pet hospital. Tom is happy. Today is his birthday. Mike is worried about his mum. His mum is ill. He must stay at home and look after her. Linda is very angry with Sam because Sam lost her new book. I think she should take a deep breath and count to ten.

拓展提升训练 (二)

- 一、1. eating 2. dance 3. be 4. goes
5. are 6. studies 7. plays 8. is wearing/wears
9. doesn't 10. sitting; thinking
11. have 12. has

- 二、1. in 2. of 3. with 4. of 5. to
6. of 7. about 8. about 9. at 10. to

- 三、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. AC 5. AB

- 四、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. C
7. AB 8. BC 9. A 10. C

- 五、1. B are 2. C eating 3. B doesn't
4. B have 5. A How

- 六、1. Many people take a bus to work.
2. How do you feel?
3. He should wear warm clothes.
4. I want to be a teacher. (答案不唯一)

- 七、1. D scientist 2. A coach 3. C actress
4. B pilot

- 八、1. C 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. C
6. B 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. B

九、(范文) Hello, I am Eliza. My family plans to have a picnic in the park on Sunday. But it rains on Sunday morning. We cannot go. My mum is worried about the food. My dad is happy because he can stay at home and finish his work. My little brother is sad. He wants to play outside. And I am OK. I can read books in my study. We can have a picnic next week.



阅读素养训练

Topic 1 Health

Lesson 1 Fast food

◆ Exercises

I. 1. AC 2. C 3. B

II. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F

◆ Learn and try

1. is; good to 2. be good for

Lesson 2 Cut down on salt

◆ Exercises

I. 1. F 2. T

II. 1. A 2. B

Lesson 3 Healthy or unhealthy?

◆ Exercises

1. some instant noodles and some cola

2. eat an egg, some fruit and drink some milk

3. have breakfast 4. healthy

5. have breakfast every day

6. some bread, an egg, an orange and some carrot juice

7. healthy

Topic 2 Protect the environment

Lesson 1 Waste sorting

◆ Exercises

I. 1. C 2. C 3. A

II. 1. 红色—C 2. 蓝色—A 3. 黄色—D

4. 绿色—B

◆ Learn and try

harmful

Lesson 2 Earth Day

◆ Exercises

I. 1. B 2. B 3. ABC 4. BC

II. 1. We should save water. We should tell our parents to go out by bus or by bike more.

2. We shouldn't cut down too many trees because trees help keep air clean. (答案不唯一)

Topic 3 Jobs

Lesson 1 Dream jobs

◆ Exercises

I. 1. B 2. A 3. AB

II. 1. He's going to study at a lawyer office to learn more skills first.

2. No, he won't.

3. 略

◆ Learn and try

1. other 2. others

Lesson 2 Guess the jobs

◆ Exercises

I. 1. F 2. T

II. 1. A 2. B

III. 1. —D 2. —C 3. —B 4. —A

◆ Learn and try

1. my 2. their

Topic 4 Travel

Lesson 1 Monkey King hit White-Bone Monster

◆ Exercises

I. 2 5 7 3 1 6 4

II. 1. They were very hungry and thirsty.

2. Because Tangseng thought they were kind people and Monkey King killed them.

Lesson 2 Welcome to London!

◆ Exercises

I. 1. B 2. C

II. 1. Big Ben; the London Eye; the British Museum; Hyde Park; Tower Bridge

2. football

3. rains; umbrellas

III. I want to visit Buckingham Palace. (答案不唯一)

Topic 5 Science and technology

Lesson 1 The Internet

◆ Exercises

I. 1. B 2. A 3. A

II. 1. World Wide Web

2. computer networks

3. buy; sell

Lesson 2 Smart home cameras

◆ Exercises

I. 1. B 2. C 3. ABC

II. 1. T 2. F 3. T

III. 1. Yes, it can.

2. It's very useful. (答案不唯一)

素养抽测卷一 (Unit 1-Unit 2)

[听力材料]

- 一、1. crossing 2. traffic 3. slow 4. walk
5. pay attention to 6. come to school
7. What an interesting film!
8. There is a hospital in my city.
9. The taxi is coming!
10. Is there a restaurant in your town?
- 二、1. The map can help you find a place.
2. Turn left, please.
3. Wu Yifan wants to see a film in it.
4. Some children go to school by ferry.
5. The library is near the zoo.
- 三、1. W: Mike, I want to buy an English book.
Where is the bookstore?
M: It's far from here. You can go by bus.
You should get off at the supermarket.
The bookstore is next to the supermarket.
2. W: Welcome to my village!
M: Thank you! It's beautiful. Is there a forest near here?
W: No, but there is a park near here.
3. W: Who's that man?
M: He's my uncle. He's a maths teacher.
W: How does he go to work?
M: He walks to work every day.
4. M: Is your grandpa in the shopping mall, Amy?
W: No, he isn't. He's hungry. He is eating sandwiches.
M: Is he in the restaurant?
W: Yes, he is.
5. W: Where do you want to go, Sam?
M: I want to go to the post office.
W: Why?
M: Because I want to buy a postcard.
- 四、(Amy is asking a policeman for help.)
Amy: Excuse me, I want to go to Zhongbai Supermarket. Where is it?
Policeman: It's next to the hospital.
Amy: How can I get there?
Policeman: First, turn right and take the No.2 bus at the bus stop. Next, get off at the library. Then, cross the street. You will be in front of Zhongbai Supermarket.

Amy: Thank you.

Policeman: You're welcome.

- 五、Hello! I'm Robin. I have GPS now! Look! This is a map of my city. There is a bookstore in my city. The post office is in front of the bookstore. On the left of the bookstore, there is a science museum. In front of the science museum, there is a hospital. On the right of the bookstore, there is a school. The cinema is behind the bookstore. There is a zoo on the right side of the post office.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. B
8. C 9. B 10. B
- 二、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A
- 三、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C
- 四、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
- 五、1. hospital 2. post office 3. zoo
4. cinema 5. school
- 六、1. bike 2. car 3. foot 4. ship 5. bus
- 七、1. talking 2. lights 3. goes 4. Is 5. looking
- 八、1. A 2. ABC 3. A 4. B 5. C
- 九、1. How does your friend come to school?
2. Where is the hospital?
3. Is there a restaurant next to the bookstore?
4. They go to Beijing by train.
5. Don't turn right.
- 十、1. C books 2. A an 3. B at 4. C on
5. A take
- 十一、1. B 2. G 3. E 4. C 5. A
- 十二、1. to 2. Turn 3. of 4. go 5. second
6. on 7. left 8. How 9. by 10. take
- 十三、1. Yes, I can.
2. Go straight and turn left at the second crossing.
3. across from
4. Yes, there is.
5. No, it isn't.
- 十四、Task 1: 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
Task 2: Follow the traffic rules and stay safe on the road! (答案不唯一)
- 十五、(范文) Mary and her mother are in front of the subway station. They are going to the art museum. First, they should turn right at the supermarket. Then they should go straight and they will see the art museum at the second crossing. It's across from the bank.



素养抽测卷二 (Unit 3-Unit 4)

[听力材料]

- 一、1. My brother is going to buy a word book.
2. Singing songs is my hobby.
3. They are going to visit their parents tomorrow.
4. My pen pal likes travelling.
5. Oliver likes going hiking.
- 二、1. I have lots of postcards. They are beautiful.
2. We're going to buy a book about space travel on Tuesday.
3. Please join our football club.
4. Mike is going to have an art lesson this Saturday.
5. My cousin lives in Harbin. He likes going ice-skating.
- 三、Judy: Where are you going this morning, Simon?
Simon: I'm going to the bookstore with my friend David.
Judy: David? Is he the boy good at telling stories?
Simon: Yes, you're right.
Judy: What are you going to buy?
Simon: We are going to buy some comic books.
Judy: What time are you going there?
Simon: At nine o'clock.
Judy: How are you going there?
Simon: We are going there by bike.
- 四、Wu Yifan: Hello, Miss White. This is Wu Yifan.
Miss White: Hi, Wu Yifan. How are you?
Wu Yifan: Fine, thanks. Miss White, I'm going to the farmers' market next week.
Miss White: Really? How are you going there?
Wu Yifan: I'm going there by car.
Miss White: Who are you going with?
Wu Yifan: I'm going with Jack and Jim.
Miss White: What are you going to buy?
Wu Yifan: I'm going to buy some beef and carrots.
Miss White: Great! Have a good time!
Wu Yifan: Thank you.
- 五、It's Friday today. John is going to have a busy day tomorrow. In the morning, he is going to the fruit shop with his father. The fruit shop is near his home. They will get there on foot. John likes salad best. They will buy some fruit to make salad. Then in the afternoon, he will help his mother do housework. In the evening, he is going to the theatre with his parents.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F
二、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. A
三、morning; bookstore; telling stories; comic books; nine; bike
四、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C
五、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
六、1. AB 2. BC 3. AC 4. ABC 5. AB
七、1. B 2. AC 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. A
7. C 8. BC 9. C 10. B
八、1. comic 2. dictionary 3. trip 4. film
5. visits 6. writing 7. does
九、1. E 2. B 3. D 4. F 5. A
十、1. F 2. E 3. A 4. D 5. B
十一、1. Are you going to fly a kite?
2. My mother doesn't make any food every Wednesday afternoon.
3. Lily is going to the post office tomorrow.
4. My sister likes going hiking.
5. I like listening to music and singing songs.
(答案不唯一)
十二、1. are 2. look 3. from 4. same 5. Class
6. likes 7. drawing 8. Chinese 9. in 10. speaks
十三、Task 1: Mike's weekend plan
Task 2: 1. help his uncle with the animals
2. Mike is going to collect vegetables
3. Mike is going to see the stars on the hill
4. is going to climb a mountain and go fishing in the lake
5. at five in the afternoon
Task 3: C
十四、(一) 1. I'm going to buy a comic book. (或: I'm going to buy a dictionary.)
2. Do you want to go to the dancing club? (或: Do you want to go to the football club?)
(二) Hello, I'm Bill. I'm going to have a busy weekend. I'm going to read books in the library on Saturday morning. I'm going to watch TV at home in the afternoon. I'm going to visit my grandparents and see a film on Sunday.

素养抽测卷三 (Unit 5-Unit 6)

[听力材料]

- 一、1. My father is very busy. He often goes to other countries by plane.
2. Sarah's father is from the UK. He is a taxi driver.

3. He likes animals. He usually goes to the zoo and sees lots of pandas.
4. It's 5 degrees today. You should wear warm clothes.
5. Lingling is my pen pal. She likes sports. She often goes running after school.

二、1. Ann: What is your uncle's job, Jack?

Jack: He is a businessman.

2. Lily: What do you want to be, Bill?

Bill: I want to be a scientist.

3. Jim: Do you go to work by bus every day, Nancy?

Nancy: No. I go to work by bike.

4. Tom: What's wrong, Lily?

Lily: I lost my favourite dictionary.

Tom: Don't be sad. I will buy you a new one.

5. Jane: What do you do, Peter?

Peter: I'm a doctor.

三、1. What is Sarah going to be?

2. What does your grandpa look like?

3. Where does your brother work?

4. Is your mother a singer?

5. What's this cartoon about?

四、My name is Linda. I'm an American girl. I'm eleven years old. I am cute. I like drawing pictures. I'm a primary school student. I go to school on foot every day. This is my mother. Her name is Nancy. She is 35 years old. She is a secretary. She is tall. She likes playing table tennis. She goes to work by bus. This is my father. His name is Eric. He is 38 years old. He's thin. He's a pilot. He likes playing baseball. He goes to work by subway.

五、Hello, I'm Nancy. I don't feel well today. I should see a doctor. My brother Carl feels cold. He should wear warm clothes. What's the matter with Albert? He is angry now because his computer is broken. What should he do? He should take a deep breath and then count to ten. Lisa is weak. She should do more exercise. I hope they will be better soon.

[参考答案]

一、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A

二、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A

三、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A

四、1. J 2. E 3. L 4. D 5. K 6. I 7. A
8. G 9. F 10. C

五、1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T

六、1. teacher nurse 2. by subway by bike
3. brother grandpa 4. worried angry
5. playing basketball playing the piano
(答案不唯一)

七、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B

八、1. A 2. ABC 3. AC 4. C 5. B

6. BC 7. AB 8. B 9. C 10. C

九、1. afraid 2. worried 3. angry 4. sad
5. happy

十、1. Does John feel cold? Yes, he does.

2. My father is a farmer.

3. How do you feel?

4. First, take a deep breath. Then, count to ten.

5. I want to be a fireman. (答案不唯一)

十一、1. E 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. G

十二、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. C

十三、连线略

In English, colours have many meanings. If you are healthy, you are in pink. If you are angry, you see red. If you are sad, you are in blue. If you are very very angry, you are in a black mood. You should listen to music or do something you like. Be happy every day.

期末素养抽测卷

[听力材料]

一、1. My uncle is a doctor. He goes to work by ship.
2. He often cooks Chinese food with his friend.
3. We will see a film at half past four in the afternoon.

4. Sarah is angry with the naughty cat.

5. I want to buy a dictionary. It is heavy.

二、1. —Where are you going this afternoon?

—My pet dog is ill. I'm going to the pet hospital.

2. I have lots of comic books about space travel.

3. Mr Wang teaches students to make robots.

4. The dog chases the cats. They are afraid of him.

5. —What are Peter's hobbies?

—He likes drawing pictures and doing kung fu.

三、1. How do you go to the museum?

2. What are Amy's hobbies?

3. Does your mother watch TV at night?

4. What are you going to do this afternoon?

5. What does Mr Green do?

四、(一) M: Hello, Sarah. What's your plan for your May Day holiday?



W: I will go to China with my family.
M: Really? What place will you visit?
W: We'll visit the West Lake in Hangzhou.
M: That sounds great. I want to go there, too.

- (二) M: What will you do tomorrow, Lily?
W: I have no idea. What about you?
M: I'll go boating with my friends. Would you like to join us?
W: Yes. That sounds nice. I like boating. When and where will we meet?
M: We'll meet in front of the bank at 7 a. m. Then we can take the No. 102 bus.
W: In front of the bank, at seven o'clock. OK. See you tomorrow.
M: See you.

五、 Students in different countries go to school in different ways. In China, most students go to school by bus or by bike. If the school is not far, they walk to school every day. But in many Western countries, students live far from their schools. They have different ways to go to school. Some of them go by subway, and some of them go by bus. In some cold countries, it often snows. The students go to school by sled because there is snow everywhere. In Papa Westray, Scotland, the students go to school by ferry.

[参考答案]

- 一、 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T
二、 1. C 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B
三、 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B
四、 (一) 1. C 2. B
(二) 3. B 4. C 5. C
五、 1. on foot 2. subway; bus 3. cold; sled
4. by ferry 5. six; school
六、 1. works 2. should 3. riding 4. studies
5. wait 6. afraid 7. postman
8. bookstore 9. draw 10. near
七、 1. B 2. B 3. AC 4. B 5. C
八、 1. makes 2. singing 3. books 4. clean
5. is going to take/will take
九、 1. E 2. F 3. D 4. A 5. C
十、 1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B
十一、 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
十二、 1. A 2. AC 3. C 4. B 5. C
十三、

My Weekend Plan

I'm going to Kunming with my sister this

weekend. Kunming is a beautiful city. It's in the southwest of China. We are going there by train. I'm going to visit Dianchi Lake.

广东省惠州市素养抽测卷

[听力材料]

- 一、 1. far 2. get 3. wear 4. early 5. price
二、 1. My pen pal likes listening to music.
2. Pizza is my favourite food.
3. Paul is my pen pal. Drawing pictures is his hobby.
4. He goes to the zoo by bus.
5. Go straight for ten minutes and you can find the cinema.
6. This is my uncle. He works at sea.
7. Robin has new GPS.
8. We are going to the supermarket and buy some fruit.
9. We eat mooncakes at the Mid-Autumn Festival.
10. I made a mistake in my test. My father is angry with me.

- 三、 1. How can I get to the hospital?
2. Is the bank far from here?
3. What does your mother do?
4. When are you going to the bookstore?
5. Does your mother go to work by car?

- 四、 1. Sarah is sad.
2. His father is a businessman.
3. You can go there by train.
4. Look at the museum. It's so big.
5. I'm going to swim tomorrow.

五、 Hello, I'm Mike. This is my father, Mr Jones. He's a music teacher. He often walks to school because our home is near the school. My mother is a doctor. She goes to work by subway. The hospital is far. I am a student. I go to school on foot every day. Reading books is my hobby. I always read stories after dinner. On Saturdays and Sundays, I often go to the park with my parents.

[参考答案]

- 一、 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C
二、 9 4 7 2 10 5 6 3 1 8
三、 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B
四、 1. sad 2. businessman 3. train 4. museum
5. tomorrow
五、 1. × 2. √ 3. √ 4. × 5. √
六、 1. D 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A
七、 1. singer 2. stamp 3. worker 4. match 5. visitor

- 八、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. C
8. A 9. C 10. B

- 九、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T

- 十、1. We should study hard and stay healthy.
2. My grandpa will tell us a story about Chang'e.
3. I have lots of comic books about space.
4. by car
5. How do you

- 十一、1. E 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D

- 十二、1. Sunday 2. with 3. excited 4. rains
5. angry 6. listen 7. sound 8. afraid

- 十三、(一) 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
(二) 1. China 2. plane 3. Great Wall
4. take photos/take pictures 5. clothes
(三) 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A

十四、My Winter Vacation

The winter vacation is coming. I'm going to read books in the library. I'm also going to do exercise every day. I'm going to help my mother do housework. I'm going to visit my grandparents in the countryside. I'm going to travel to some interesting places. I'll have a wonderful winter vacation!

广东省河源市素养抽测卷

[听力材料]

- 一、1. tonight 2. like 3. housework 4. wear
5. bus 6. sad 7. always 8. ferry 9. postman
10. think

- 二、1. Jim goes to school by ship.
2. Stop and wait at a red light.
3. I'm going to visit my uncle today.
4. He is a policeman.
5. You should do homework at home.

- 三、1. Going hiking is my father's hobby.
2. I'm going to the supermarket to buy some vegetables.
3. When you cross the street, you should pay attention to the traffic lights.
4. My uncle is a policeman.
5. He is afraid of the big dog.

- 四、1. How can I go to the restaurant?
2. What does your father do?
3. How does he go to the park?
4. When are you going to Hainan?
5. How do you feel?

- 五、Mike is a policeman. He works in a police

station. He usually goes to work by subway because the police station is far from his home. He is busy on the weekdays. Sometimes he likes to draw some pictures after work. Mike likes reading books in the library on the weekend. But this weekend he is going to the bookstore and buy some storybooks.

[参考答案]

- 一、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. A 7. B
8. C 9. B 10. C

- 二、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A

- 三、5 3 1 4 2

- 四、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C

- 五、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T

- 六、1. C 2. A 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. D
8. A 9. C 10. C

- 七、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. C
8. C 9. B 10. C

- 八、1. D 2. C 3. E 4. A 5. B

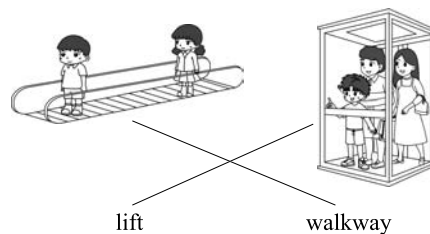
- 九、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. B A

- 十、1. businessman 2. factory worker 3. seeds
4. Bring 5. flower 6. three 7. red/purple
8. purple/red 9. nothing 10. sad

- 十一、(一) 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

- (二) 1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B

- (三) Task 1: A house that can walk. (答案不唯一)



Task 3: 1. Space Cinemas

2. Adventure Classrooms

3. Young Inventor Lab

十二、

My Family

Hello, I'm Amy. I'm a student. There are three people in my family. My father is a pilot. He works on a plane. He goes to work by bus. He likes making model planes. My mother is a scientist. She works in a university. She goes to work by car. She likes singing songs. I often go to school on foot. Swimming and climbing mountains are my hobbies.